

**UNITED STATES
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

FORM 10-K

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15 (d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from _____ to _____

Commission file number 1-11430

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC.

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

25-1190717
(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

**622 Third Avenue
38th Floor
New York, New York**
(Address of principal executive office)

10017-6707
(Zip Code)

(212) 878-1800

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, \$.10 par value	New York Stock Exchange

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:

None

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act.

Yes No

Indicate by check mark if Registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act.

Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days.

Yes No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files).

Yes No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of the Registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large Accelerated Filer Accelerated Filer Non-accelerated Filer Smaller Reporting Company
(Do not check if smaller reporting company)

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act).

Yes No

The aggregate market value of the voting stock held by non-affiliates of the Registrant, based upon the closing price at which the stock was sold as of July 1, 2016, was approximately \$2.0 billion. Solely for the purposes of this calculation, shares of common stock held by officers, directors and beneficial owners of 10% or more of the outstanding common stock have been excluded in that such persons may be deemed to be affiliates. This determination of affiliate status is not necessarily a conclusive determination for other purposes.

As of February 3, 2017, the Registrant had outstanding 35,037,439 shares of common stock, all of one class.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

Portions of the registrant's Proxy Statement for its 2016 Annual Meeting of Stockholders are incorporated herein by reference in Part III of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC.
2016 FORM 10-K ANNUAL REPORT
Table of Contents

	<u>Page</u>
PART I	
Item 1. Business	3
Item 1A. Risk Factors	13
Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments	18
Item 2. Properties	19
Item 3. Legal Proceedings	24
Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures	25
PART II	
Item 5. Market for the Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities	25
Item 6. Selected Financial Data	28
Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	29
Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk	43
Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data	44
Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure	44
Item 9A. Controls and Procedures	44
Item 9B. Other Information	45
PART III	
Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance	45
Item 11. Executive Compensation	46
Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters	46
Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence	46
Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services	47
PART IV	
Item 15. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules	48
Signatures	52

PART I

Item 1. Business

Minerals Technologies Inc. (together with its subsidiaries, the "Company", "we", "us" or "our") is a resource- and technology-based company that develops, produces, and markets on a worldwide basis a broad range of specialty mineral, mineral-based and synthetic mineral products and supporting systems and services. On May 9, 2014, the Company acquired AMCOL International Corporation ("AMCOL"). See Note 2 to the Consolidated Financial Statements for further details.

The Company has five reportable segments: Specialty Minerals, Refractories, Performance Materials, Construction Technologies, and Energy Services.

- The Specialty Minerals segment produces and sells the synthetic mineral product precipitated calcium carbonate ("PCC") and processed mineral product quicklime ("lime"), and mines mineral ores then processes and sells natural mineral products, primarily limestone and talc. This segment's products are used principally in the paper, building materials, paint and coatings, glass, ceramic, polymer, food, automotive and pharmaceutical industries.
- The Refractories segment produces and markets monolithic and shaped refractory materials and specialty products, services and application and measurement equipment, and calcium metal and metallurgical wire products. Refractories segment products are primarily used in high-temperature applications in the steel, non-ferrous metal and glass industries.
- The Performance Materials segment is a leading supplier of bentonite and bentonite-related products. This segment also supplies chromite and leonardite and operates more than 25 mining or production facilities worldwide.
- The Construction Technologies segment provides products for non-residential construction, environmental and infrastructure projects worldwide. It serves customers engaged in a broad range of construction projects, including site remediation, concrete waterproofing for underground structures, liquid containment on projects ranging from landfills to flood control, and drilling applications including foundation, slurry wall, tunneling, water well, and horizontal drilling.
- The Energy Services segment provides services to improve the production, costs, compliance, and environmental impact of activities performed in oil and gas industry. This segment offers a range of services for off-shore filtration and well testing to the worldwide oil and gas industry.

The following table sets forth the percentage of our revenues generated from each segment for each of our last three fiscal years:

Percentage of Net Sales	2016	2015	2014
Specialty Minerals	36%	35%	38%
Refractories	17%	16%	21%
Performance Materials	31%	29%	20%
Construction Technologies	11%	10%	9%
Energy Services	5%	10%	12%
Total	100%	100%	100%

The Company maintains a research and development focus. The Company's research and development capability for developing and introducing technologically advanced new products has enabled the Company to anticipate and satisfy changing customer requirements, creating market opportunities through new product development and product application innovations.

Specialty Minerals Segment

PCC Products and Markets

The Company's PCC product line net sales were \$452.2 million, \$488.1 million and \$520.6 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The Company's sales of PCC have been, and are expected to continue to be, made primarily to the printing and writing papers segment of the paper industry. The Company also produces PCC for sale to companies in the polymer, food and pharmaceutical industries.

PCC Products - Paper

In the paper industry, the Company's PCC is used:

- As a filler in the production of coated and uncoated wood-free printing and writing papers, such as office papers;
- As a filler in the production of coated and uncoated groundwood (wood-containing) paper such as magazine and catalog papers; and

[Table of Contents](#)

- As a coating pigment for both wood-free and groundwood papers.

The Company's Paper PCC product line net sales were \$387.9 million, \$423.3 million and \$454.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

Approximately 24% of the Company's sales consist of PCC sold to papermakers from "satellite" PCC plants. A satellite PCC plant is a PCC manufacturing facility located near a paper mill, thereby eliminating costs of transporting PCC from remote production sites to the paper mill. The Company believes the competitive advantages offered by improved economics and superior optical characteristics of paper produced with PCC manufactured by the Company's satellite PCC plants resulted in substantial growth in the number of the Company's satellite PCC plants since the first such plant was built in 1986. For information with respect to the locations of the Company's PCC plants as of December 31, 2016, see Item 2, "Properties," below.

The Company currently manufactures several customized PCC product forms using proprietary processes. Each product form is designed to provide optimum balance of paper properties including brightness, opacity, bulk, strength and improved printability. The Company's research and development and technical service staff focuses on expanding sales from its existing and potential new satellite PCC plants as well as developing new technologies for new applications. These technologies include, among others, acid-tolerant ("AT[®]") PCC, which allows PCC to be introduced to the large wood-containing segment of the printing and writing paper market, OPACARB[®] PCC, a family of products for paper coating, our FulFill[®] family of products, a system of high-filler technologies that offers papermakers a variety of efficient, flexible solutions which decrease dependency on natural fibers, and New Yield[™], an innovative technology that converts a paper and pulp mill waste stream into a functional pigment for filling paper.

The Company owns, staffs, operates and maintains all of its satellite PCC facilities, and owns or licenses the related technology. Generally, the Company and its paper mill customers enter into long-term evergreen agreements, initially ten years in length, pursuant to which the Company supplies substantially all of the customer's precipitated calcium carbonate filler requirements. The Company is generally permitted to sell to third-parties PCC produced at a satellite plant in excess of the host paper mill's requirement.

The Company also sells a range of PCC products to paper manufacturers from production sites not associated with paper mills. These merchant facilities are located at Adams, Massachusetts and Lifford, United Kingdom.

PCC Markets - Paper

Uncoated Wood-Free Printing and Writing Papers – North America. Beginning in the mid-1980's, as a result of a concentrated research and development effort, the Company's satellite PCC plants facilitated the conversion of a substantial percentage of North American uncoated wood-free printing and writing paper producers to lower-cost alkaline papermaking technology. The Company estimates that during 2016, more than 90% of North American uncoated wood-free paper was produced employing alkaline technology. Presently, the Company owns and operates 14 commercial satellite PCC plants located at paper mills that produce uncoated wood-free printing and writing papers in North America.

Uncoated Wood-Free Printing and Writing Papers – Outside North America. The Company estimates the amount of uncoated wood-free printing and writing papers produced outside of North America at facilities that can be served by satellite and merchant PCC plants is more than twice as large (measured in tons of paper produced) as the North American uncoated wood-free paper market currently served by the Company. The Company believes that the superior brightness, opacity and bulking characteristics offered by its PCC products allow it to compete with suppliers of ground limestone and other filler products outside of North America. Presently, the Company owns and operates 28 commercial satellite PCC plants located at paper mills that produce uncoated wood-free printing and writing papers outside of North America.

Uncoated Groundwood Paper. The uncoated groundwood paper market, including newsprint, represents approximately 20% of worldwide paper production. Paper mills producing wood-containing paper still generally employ acid papermaking technology. The conversion to alkaline technology by these mills has been hampered by the tendency of wood-containing papers to darken in an alkaline environment. The Company has developed proprietary application technology for the manufacture of high-quality groundwood paper in an acidic environment using PCC (AT[®] PCC). Furthermore, as groundwood or wood-containing paper mills use larger quantities of recycled fiber, there is a trend toward the use of neutral papermaking technology in this segment for which the Company presently supplies traditional PCC chemistries. The Company now supplies PCC at 6 groundwood paper mills around the world and licenses its technology to a ground calcium carbonate producer to help accelerate the conversion from acid to alkaline papermaking.

Coated Paper. The Company continues to pursue satellite PCC opportunities in coated paper markets where our products provide unique performance and/or cost reduction benefits to papermakers and printers. Our Opacarb product line is designed to create value to the papermaker and can be used alone or in combination with other coating pigments. PCC coating products are produced at 8 of the Company's PCC plants worldwide.

Specialty PCC Products and Markets

The Company also produces and sells a full range of dry PCC products on a merchant basis for non-paper applications. The Company's Specialty PCC product line net sales were \$64.3 million, \$64.8 million and \$66.1 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The Company sells surface-treated and untreated grades of PCC to the polymer industry for use in automotive and construction applications, and to the adhesives and printing inks industries. The Company's PCC is also used by the food and pharmaceutical industries as a source of calcium in tablets and food applications, as a buffering agent in tablets, and as a mild abrasive in toothpaste. The Company produces PCC for specialty applications from production sites at Adams, Massachusetts and Lifford, England.

Processed Minerals - Products and Markets

The Company mines and processes natural mineral products, primarily limestone and talc. The Company also manufactures lime, a limestone-based product. The Company's net sales of processed mineral products were \$139.3 million, \$136.5 million and \$129.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Net sales of talc products were \$55.7 million, \$55.9 million and \$55.5 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Net sales of ground calcium carbonate ("GCC") products, which are principally lime and limestone, were \$83.6 million, \$80.6 million and \$74.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

The Company mines and processes GCC products at its reserves in the eastern and western parts of the United States. GCC is used and sold in the construction, automotive and consumer markets.

Lime produced at the Company's Adams, Massachusetts, and Lifford, United Kingdom, facilities is used primarily as a raw material for the manufacture of PCC at these sites and is sold commercially to various chemical and other industries.

The Company mines, beneficiates and processes talc at its Barretts site, located near Dillon, Montana. Talc is sold worldwide in finely ground form for ceramic applications and in North America for paint and coatings and polymer applications. Because of the exceptional chemical purity of the Barretts ore, a significant portion of worldwide automotive catalytic converter ceramic substrates contain the Company's Barretts talc.

Our high quality limestone, dolomitic limestone, and talc products are defined primarily by the chemistry and color characteristics of the ore bodies. Ore samples are analyzed by x-ray fluorescence (XRF) and other techniques to determine purity and more generally by Hunter brightness measurement to determine dry brightness and the Hunter yellowness (b) value. We serve multiple markets from each of our operations, each of which has different requirements relating to a combination of chemical and physical properties.

Refractories Segment

Refractory Products and Markets

Refractories Products

The Company offers a broad range of monolithic and pre-cast refractory products and related systems and services. The Company's Refractory segment net sales were \$274.5 million, \$295.9 million and \$359.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

Refractory product sales are often supported by Company-supplied proprietary application equipment and on-site technical service support. The Company's proprietary application equipment is used to apply refractory materials to the walls of steel-making furnaces and other high temperature vessels to maintain and extend their useful life. Net sales of refractory products, including those for non-ferrous applications, were \$219.0 million, \$230.7 million and \$273.9 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The Company's proprietary application system, such as its MINSCAN[®], allow for remote-controlled application of the Company's refractory products in steel-making furnaces as well as in steel ladles. Since the steel-making industry is characterized by intense price competition, which results in a continuing emphasis on increased productivity, these application systems and the technologically advanced refractory materials developed in the Company's research laboratories have been well accepted by the Company's customers. These products allow steel makers to improve their performance through, among other things, the application of monolithic refractories to furnace linings while the furnace is at operating temperature, thereby eliminating the need for furnace cool-down periods and steel-production interruption. The result is a lower overall cost for steel produced by steel makers. The Company also pursues cost-per-ton refractory contracts, where, together with other refractory companies, the Company is responsible for coordinating refractory maintenance of the steel furnaces and other steel production vessels. These opportunities provide longer-term stability and a closer working relationship with the customer.

The Company's technical service staff and application equipment assist customers to achieve desired productivity objectives. The Company's technicians are also able to conduct laser measurement of refractory wear, sometimes in conjunction with robotic application tools, to improve refractory performance at many customer locations. The Company believes that these services, together with its refractory product offerings, provide it with a strategic marketing advantage.

Table of Contents

Over the past several years the Refractories segment has continued to develop, reformulate, and optimize its products and application technology to maintain its competitive advantage in the market place. Some of the products the Company has developed and optimized in the past several years include:

- **HOTCRETE®**: High durability shotcrete products for applications at high temperatures in ferrous applications such as steel ladles, electric arc furnaces (EAF) and basic oxygen furnaces (BOF) furnaces.
- **FASTFIRE®**: High durability castable and shotcrete products in the non-ferrous and ferrous industries with the added benefit of rapid dry-out capabilities.
- **OPTIFORM®**: A system of products and equipment for the rapid continuous casting of refractories for applications such as steel ladle safety linings.
- **ENDURATEQ®**: A high durability refractory shape for glass contact applications such as plungers and orifice rings.
- **DECTEQ™**: A system for the automatic control of electrical power feeding electrodes used in electric arc steel making furnaces.
- **LACAM® Torpedo**: A laser scanning system that measures the refractory lining thickness inside a Hot Iron (Torpedo) Ladle. The torpedo ladles transport liquid iron from a blast furnace to the steel plant.
- **LACAM®**: A new, fourth generation Lacam® laser measurement device for use in the worldwide steel industry that is 17 times faster than the previous version. This new technology provides the fastest and most accurate laser scanning for hot surfaces available today.

Refractories Markets

The principal market for the Company's refractory products is the steel industry. Management believes that certain trends in the steel industry will provide growth opportunities for the Company. These trends include growth and quality improvements in select geographic regions (e.g., China, Middle East, Eastern Europe and India) the development of improved manufacturing processes such as thin-slab casting, the trend in North America to shift production from integrated mills to electric arc furnaces (mini-mills) and the ever-increasing need for improved productivity and longer lasting refractories.

The Company sells its refractory products in the following markets:

Steel Furnace. The Company sells gunnable monolithic refractory products and application systems to users of basic oxygen furnaces and electric arc furnaces for application on furnace walls to prolong the life of furnace linings.

Other Iron and Steel. The Company sells monolithic refractory materials and pre-cast refractory shapes for iron and steel ladles, vacuum degassers, continuous casting tundishes, blast furnaces and reheating furnaces. The Company offers a full line of materials to satisfy most continuous casting refractory applications. This full line consists of gunnable materials, refractory shapes and permanent linings.

Industrial Refractory Systems. The Company sells refractory shapes and linings to non-steel refractories consuming industries including glass, cement, aluminum and petrochemicals, power generation and other non-steel industries. The Company also produces a specialized line of carbon composites and pyrolytic graphite primarily sold under the PYROID® trademark, primarily to the aerospace and electronics industries.

Metallurgical Products and Markets

The Company produces a number of other technologically advanced products for the steel industry, including calcium metal, metallurgical wire products and a number of metal treatment specialty products. Net sales of metallurgical products were \$55.5 million, \$65.2 million and \$85.8 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The Company manufactures calcium metal at its Canaan, Connecticut, facility and purchases calcium in international markets. Calcium metal is used in the manufacture of the Company's PFERROCAL® solid-core calcium wire, and is also sold for use in the manufacture of batteries and magnets. We also manufacture cored wires at our Canaan, Connecticut and Hengelo, Netherlands, manufacturing sites. The Company sells metallurgical wire products and associated wire-injection equipment for use in the production of high-quality steel. These metallurgical wire products are injected into molten steel to improve castability and reduce imperfections.

Performance Materials Segment

The Performance Materials segment is a leading supplier of bentonite and bentonite-related products. Bentonite is a sedimentary deposit containing greater than 50% montmorillonite and is volcanic in origin. It is surface mined and then dried, crushed, sent through grinding mills where it is sized to customer requirements, and transferred to silos for automatic bagging or bulk shipment. The processed bentonite may be chemically modified. Bentonite's unique chemical structure gives it a diverse range of capabilities, enabling it to act as a thickener, sealant, binder, lubricant or absorption agent. From a commercial standpoint, there are two primary types of natural bentonite, sodium and calcium. Sodium-bentonite is characterized by its ability to absorb large amounts of water and form viscous, thixotropic suspensions. Calcium-bentonite, in contrast, is characterized by its low water absorption and swelling capabilities and its inability to stay suspended in water. Each type of bentonite has its own unique applications. This segment also supplies chromite and leonardite, which is primarily used in metalcasting, drilling fluid additive, and agricultural applications. The principal products of this segment are marketed under various registered trade names, including VOLCLAY®, PANTHER CREEK®, PREMIUM GEL®, ADDITROL®, ENERSOL®, and Hevi-Sand®.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Performance Materials segment has three product lines – metalcasting; household, personal care and specialty products; and basic minerals and other products.

Metalcasting Products and Markets

The metalcasting product line produces custom-blended mineral and non-mineral products to strengthen sand molds for casting auto parts, farm and construction equipment, oil and gas production equipment, power generation turbine castings and rail car components. These products help our customers in the foundry and casting industry to improve productivity by reducing scrap from metalcasting defects and poor surface quality. The ADDITROL[®] blends also improve the efficiency and recycling of sand blends in mold sand systems by lowering clay consumption, and improve air quality by reducing volatile organic compound emissions. Our mine to mold operational capability has resulted in providing a consistent high quality product, technical support and reliable on-time delivery service valued by our customers.

In the ferrous casting market, the Company specializes in blending bentonite of various grades by themselves or with mineral binders containing sodium bentonite, calcium bentonite, seacoal and other ingredients.

In the steel alloy casting market, the Company sells chromite products with a particle size distribution specific to customers' needs. One of chromite's qualities is its ability to conduct heat. Thus, the Company markets the product for use in making very large, high integrity, steel alloy castings where the chromite is better suited to withstand the high heat and pressure associated with the casting process. This product line was originally sold into the U.S. by the American Colloid Company (ACC) and over the past 90 years has grown in its use throughout the world including China, Thailand, Korea, Australia and Southeast Asia. Over the past two years, the Company has focused on further investment in China and establishing a market position in India.

In January 2015, the Company announced that it entered into an agreement with Glencore in South Africa, where the Company mines chromite. Under the agreement, Glencore will supply chromite products from the Glencore-Merafe joint venture that will be exclusively distributed by the Company in certain territories, including the Americas.

The Company's metalcasting product line net sales were \$258.0 million in 2016, \$266.4 million in 2015 and \$181.4 million from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Household, Personal Care and Specialty Products and Markets

The household, personal care and specialty products contain pet litter, fabric care, health and beauty, and agricultural specialty products.

The pet litter products include sodium bentonite-based scoopable (clumping), traditional and alternative cat litters sold to grocery and drug stores, mass merchandisers, wholesale clubs and pet specialty stores throughout North America, Europe and Asia. The Company's scoopable products' clump-forming capability traps urine, thereby reducing waste by allowing for easy removal of only the odor-producing elements from the litter box. The Company is primarily a provider of private-label cat litter to retail partners, as well as a provider of bulk cat litter to national brands and other private label packaging companies. In North America, these products are sold from three principal sites from which we package and distribute finished goods, as well as ship bulk material via rail cars. The Company's internal transportation group provides logistics services and is a key component of our capability in supplying customers on a national basis.

The Company supplies fabric care products and additives consisting of high-grade, agglomerated bentonite and other mineral additives that perform as softening agents in certain powdered-detergent formulations or act as carriers for colorants and fragrances. These fabric care products are not only cost-effective but also provide product development capabilities to adapt along with our customers' requirements.

The Company manufactures personal care products consisting of polymer delivery systems and purified grades of bentonite ingredients for sale to manufacturers of skin care products. The polymers are used to deliver high-value actives and the bentonite-based materials act as thickening, suspension and dispersion agent emollients for topical skin care formulations. The personal care products range from ingredient sales to fully formulated finished goods.

Specialty materials products contain bentonite and leonardite based proprietary solutions for consumer and industrial applications. Agricultural is the main market segment in this product line.

The Company's household, personal care and specialty product line net sales were \$171.2 million in 2016, \$172.7 million in 2015 and \$108.0 million from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Basic Minerals and Other Products and Markets

Basic minerals and other products line contains sales of bentonite, chromite and leonardite to a variety of end markets and industrial application, including the following:

Drilling Fluid Additives: Sodium bentonite and leonardite are components of certain drilling fluids used in oil and gas well drilling. Bentonite imparts thickening and suspension properties that facilitate the transport of rock cuttings to the surface during the drilling process. It also contributes to a drilling fluid's ability to lubricate the drill bit and coat the underground formations to prevent hole collapse and drill-bit seizing. We market our drilling fluid additives under our own and private-label trade names. At least two drilling fluid service competitors have captive bentonite operations while others are party to long-term bentonite supply agreements. The potential customers for our products, therefore, are generally limited to those service organizations that are neither vertically integrated nor have long-term supply arrangements with other bentonite producers. Our primary trademark for this application is the trade name PREMIUM GEL®.

Ferro Alloys: A by-product of our chromite processing operations for foundry products includes a chromite ore which has physical properties suited for use in producing ferrochrome. The ore generally needs to have chromite content in excess of 42% to meet metallurgical grade specifications. Manufacturers of stainless steel are the primary users of ferrochrome.

Other Industrial: The Company produces bentonite and bentonite blends for the construction industry to be used as a plasticizing agent in cement, and plaster and bricks. The Company also supplies bentonite to help pelletize other materials for ease of use. Examples of this application include the pelletizing of iron ore.

This product line also includes sales from our internal transportation and logistics group. The Company's basic minerals and other product line net sales were \$73.6 million in 2016, \$75.7 million in 2015 and \$63.4 million from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Construction Technologies Segment

The Construction Technologies segment provides products for non-residential construction, environmental and infrastructure projects worldwide. It serves customers engaged in a broad range of construction projects, including site remediation, concrete waterproofing for underground structures, liquid containment on projects ranging from landfills to flood control, and drilling applications including foundation, slurry wall, tunneling, water well, and horizontal drilling.

This segment has two product lines – environmental products, and building materials and other products.

Environmental Products and Markets

The Environmental Product line includes bentonite and polymer lining technologies, as well as, other environmental remediation applications.

The Company sells lining and other products for a variety of applications, most of which are directed to preserving or remediating environmental issues. The Company helps customers protect ground water and soil through the sale of geosynthetic clay liner products containing bentonite. These products are marketed under the RESISTEX® and BENTOMAT® trade names principally for lining and capping landfills, mine waste disposal sites and industrial waste storage sites, such as, bauxite residue and coal ash waste. The Company also provides associated geosynthetic materials for these applications, including geotextiles and drainage geocomposites.

Environmental Products also includes specialized technologies to mitigate vapor intrusion in new building construction. The Company's innovative vapor barrier systems prevent potentially harmful vapors from entering occupied space, thus facilitating low-risk redevelopment. The Company also provides reactive capping technologies and solutions to effectively contain residual contamination, reduce costs associated with ex-situ remedies, and aid in environmental protection. Products offered include Liquid Boot®, a liquid applied vapor barrier system; REACTIVE CORE-MAT™, an in-situ sediment capping material; ORGANOCLOY®, which absorbs organic containments; and QUIK-SOLID®, a super absorbent media.

The Company's environmental product line net sales were \$78.9 million in 2016, \$69.7 million in 2015 and \$70.7 million from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Building Materials and Other Products and Markets

The building materials and other products line includes various active and passive products for waterproofing of underground structures, commercial building envelopes and tunnels. It also includes drilling products for commercial buildings, construction foundations, and for horizontal directional drilling applications.

Building Materials: The Company offers a wide variety of active and passive waterproofing and greenroof technologies for use in protecting the building envelope of non-residential construction, including buildings, subways, and parkway systems. Our products include VOLTEX®, a waterproofing composite comprised of two polypropylene geotextiles filled with sodium bentonite; ULTRASEAL®, an advanced membrane using a unique active polymer core; and COREFLEX®, featuring heat-welded seams for protection of critical infrastructure. In addition to these membrane materials, we also provide roofing products and a variety of sealants and other accessories required to create a functional waterproofing system. The end-users of these products are generally building sub-contractors who are responsible for installing the products.

[Table of Contents](#)

Drilling Products: Drilling products are used in environmental and geotechnical drilling applications, horizontal directional drilling, mineral exploration and foundation construction. The products are used to install monitoring wells, facilitate horizontal and water well drilling, and seal abandoned exploration drill holes. VOLCLAY GROUT™, HYDRAUL-EZ®[®], BENTOGROUT® and VOLCLAY TABLETS™ are among the trade names for products used in these applications. Ground source heat loop systems utilizing GEOTHERMAL GROUT™ represent a developing area for drilling products. The Company also offers a range of drilling products used in the excavation of foundations for large buildings, bridges and dams; these products include SHORE PAC® and PREMIUM GEL®. The end-users for these products are typically small well drilling companies and general contractors.

The Company's building materials and other product line net sales were \$104.4 million in 2016, \$110.4 million in 2015 and \$81.6 million from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Energy Services Segment

The Energy Services segment provides services to improve the production, costs, compliance, and environmental impact of activities performed in the oil and gas industry. The composition of customers within this segment varies from year to year and is significantly dependent on the type of activities each customer is undertaking within the year, regulations, and overall dynamics of the oil and gas industry. Due to the weak market conditions in the oil and gas sector, the Company exited U.S. on-shore Nitrogen and Well Testing services lines during the second quarter of 2016. As a result, the Company currently provides services for off-shore filtration and well testing to the worldwide oil and gas industry. Services are provided through subsidiaries located in Australia, Brazil, Malaysia, Nigeria, Mexico, Indonesia, the United Kingdom, and the U.S., in the Gulf of Mexico. Energy Services segment's net sales were \$85.9 million in 2016, \$182.2 million in 2015 and \$210.1 million from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Principal Services

The Company provides the following principal services:

Water Treatment / Filtration: The Company helps customers comply with regulatory requirements by providing equipment, technologies, personnel and filtration media to treat waste water generated during oil production.

The Company specializes in water treatment processes and technologies to remove oil, hydrocarbons, heavy metals, solids, toxic materials and other contaminants from customers' operation wastewater stream.

Well Testing: The Company provides equipment and personnel to help customers control well production, as well as to clean up, unload, separate, measure component flow, and capture fluids from oil and gas wells.

The Company delivers complete well testing solutions and effective operations in all testing environments.

Marketing and Sales

The Company relies principally on its worldwide direct sales force to market its products. The direct sales force is augmented by technical service teams that are familiar with the industries to which the Company markets its products, and by several regional distributors. The Company's sales force works closely with the Company's technical service staff to solve technical and other issues faced by the Company's customers.

In the Specialty Minerals segment, the Company's technical service staff assists paper producers in ongoing evaluations of the use of PCC for paper coating and filling applications.

In the Refractory segment, the Company's technical service personnel advise on the use of refractory materials, and, in many cases pursuant to service agreements, apply the refractory materials to the customers' furnaces and other vessels.

In the Performance Materials segment, the Company's industry-specialized sales group and technically oriented sales persons provide expertise not only to educate our customers on the bentonite blend properties but also to aid them in producing castings efficiently. Certain of our products are distributed through networks of distributors and representatives, who warehouse specific products at strategic locations.

In the Construction Technologies segment, sales and distribution of environmental products are primarily performed through the Company's own personnel and facilities. Our staff includes sales professionals and technical support engineers who analyze the suitability of our products in relation to the customer's specific application and the conditions that products will endure or the environment in which they will operate. Building materials products are sold through our own sales professionals, as well as through an integrated distributor and dealer network. Our sales and technical staff typically assist project designers by providing technical data to engineers and architects who specify our products in the design of building structures. Our drilling products are generally sold through an extensive distribution network coordinated by our regional sales managers.

In the Energy Services segment, the Company's employees sell the services on a direct basis.

Continued use of skilled technical service teams is an important component of the Company's business strategy. The Company works closely with its customers to ensure that their requirements are satisfied, and it often trains and supports customer personnel in the use of the Company's products. The Company oversees domestic marketing and sales activities principally from Bethlehem, Pennsylvania and Hoffman Estates, Illinois, and from regional sales offices elsewhere in the United States. The Company's international marketing and sales efforts are directed from regional centers located in India, the United Kingdom, Brazil, and China. The Company believes that its worldwide network of sales personnel and manufacturing sites facilitates the continued international expansion.

Raw Materials

The Company depends in part on having an adequate supply of raw materials for its manufacturing operations, particularly lime and carbon dioxide for the PCC product line, and magnesia and alumina for its Refractory operations. We also depend on having an adequate supply of bentonite, leonardite and chromite for our Performance Materials segment, bentonite for our Construction Technologies segment, and limestone and talc for our Processed Minerals product line. Supplies of bentonite, leonardite, chromite, limestone and talc are provided through the Company's own mining operations and we depend on having adequate access to ore reserves of appropriate quality at such mining operations.

The Company uses lime in the production of PCC and is a significant purchaser of lime worldwide. Generally, the lime utilized in our business is readily available from numerous sources and we purchase lime under long-term supply contracts from unaffiliated suppliers located in close geographic proximity to the Company's PCC plants. We also produce lime at our Adams, Massachusetts facility and our Lifford, UK facility, although most of the lime produced at our Adams facility and all of the lime produced at our Lifford facility is consumed in the production of Specialty PCC at the plant. We currently supply some quantities of lime to third parties that are in close proximity to our Adams plant and could supply small quantities of lime to certain of our PCC satellite facilities that are in close geographic proximity to the Adams plant. Carbon dioxide is readily available in exhaust gas from the host paper mills, or other operations at our merchant facilities.

The principal raw materials used in the Company's monolithic refractory products are refractory-grade magnesia and various forms of alumina silicates. Approximately 45% percent of the Company's magnesia requirements were purchased from sources in China over the past five years. The price and availability of bulk raw materials from China are subject to fluctuations that could affect the Company's sales to its customers. In addition, the volatility of transportation costs has also affected the delivered cost of raw materials imported from China to North America and Europe. The Company has developed alternate sources of magnesia over the past few years that have reduced our reliance on China-sourced magnesia. The amount sourced from China and other locations can vary from year to year depending upon price and availability from each source. The alumina we utilize in our business is readily available from numerous sources. The Company also purchases calcium metal, calcium silicide, graphite, calcium carbide and various alloys for use in the production of metallurgical wire products and uses lime and aluminum in the production of calcium metal.

In addition to bentonite, leonardite and chromite provided through our mining operations, our Performance Materials segment's principal raw materials are coal and soda ash, and our Construction Technologies segment's principal raw material is woven and unwoven polyester material, all of which are readily available from numerous sources.

Mineral Reserves and Mining Process

The Company relies on access to bentonite reserves to support its Performance Materials and Construction Technologies segments. The Company has reserves of sodium and calcium bentonite at various locations in the U.S., including Wyoming, South Dakota, Montana and Alabama, as well as in Australia, China, and Turkey. Through the Company's affiliations and joint ventures, the Company also has access to bentonite deposits in Egypt, India, and Mexico. Assuming the continuation of 2016 annualized usage rates, the Company has reserves of commercially usable sodium bentonite for the next 56 years. Under the same assumptions, the Company has reserves of commercially usable calcium bentonite for the next 49 years. The Company owns or controls the properties on which the bentonite reserves are located through long-term leases, royalty agreements (including easement and right of way agreements) and patented and unpatented mining claims. No single or group of mining claims or leases is significant or material to the financial condition or operations of our Company or our segments. The majority of our current bentonite mining in the U.S. occurs on reserves where our rights to such reserves accrue to us through over 80 mining leases and royalty agreements and 2,000 mining claims. A majority of these are with private parties and located in Montana, South Dakota and Wyoming. The bentonite deposits underlying these claims and leases generally lie in parcels of land varying between 20 and 40 acres.

In general, our bentonite reserves are immediately adjacent to, or within sixty miles of, one of the related processing plants. All of the properties on which our reserves are located are either physically accessible for the purposes of mining and hauling or the cost of obtaining physical access would not be material. Access to processing facilities from the mining areas is generally by private road, public highways, or railroads. For most of our leased properties and mining claims, there are multiple means of access.

[Table of Contents](#)

Bentonite is surface mined, generally with large earthmoving scrapers, and then loaded into trucks and off-highway-haul wagons for movement to processing plants. The mining and hauling of our bentonite is done by us and by independent contractors. At the processing plants, bentonite is dried, crushed and sent through grinding mills, where it is sized to customer requirements, then chemically modified, where needed, and transferred to silos for automatic bagging or bulk shipment. Most of the production is shipped as processed rather than stored for inventory.

For our Performance Materials segment, we also mine leonardite, a form of oxidized lignite, in North Dakota, and chromite, an iron chromium oxide, in South Africa, and transport them to nearby processing facilities. Assuming the continuation of 2016 annualized usage rates, the Company has reserves of commercially usable leonardite for the next 97 years, and commercially usable chromite for the next 40 years.

The Processed Minerals product line of our Specialty Minerals segment is supported by the Company's limestone reserves located in the western and eastern parts of the United States, and talc reserves located in Montana. The Company generally owns and surface mines these reserves and processes its products at nearby processing plants. The Company estimates these reserves, at current usage levels, to be in excess of 40 years at its limestone production facilities and in excess of 14 years at its talc production facility.

The Company has ongoing exploration and development activities for all of its mineral interests with the intent to increase its proven and probable reserves.

See Item 2, "Properties," for more information with respect to those facilities.

The Company relies on shipping bulk cargos of bentonite from the United States, Turkey and China to customers, as well as our own subsidiaries, and we are sensitive to our ability to recover these shipping costs. In the last few years, bulk cargo shipping rates have been very volatile, and, to a lesser extent, the availability of bulk cargo containers has been sporadic.

Competition

The Company is continually engaged in efforts to develop new products and technologies and refine existing products and technologies in order to remain competitive and to position itself as a market leader.

With respect to its PCC products, the Company competes for sales to the paper industry with other minerals, such as GCC and kaolin, based in large part upon technological know-how, patents and processes that allow the Company to deliver PCC that it believes imparts gloss, brightness, opacity and other properties to paper on an economical basis. The Company is the leading manufacturer and supplier of PCC to the paper industry.

The Company competes in sales of its limestone and talc based primarily upon quality, price, and geographic location.

With respect to the Company's refractory products, competitive conditions vary by geographic region. Competition is based upon the performance characteristics of the product (including strength, consistency and ease of application), price, and the availability of technical support.

For the Performance Materials segment, the Company competes on the basis of product quality, price, logistics, service and technical support. There are numerous major producers of competing products and various regional suppliers in the areas the Company serves. Some of the competitors, especially in the chromite market, are companies primarily in other lines of business with substantially greater financial resources than ours.

For the Construction Technologies segment, with respect to its lining technologies product line, the Company competes with geosynthetic clay liner manufacturers worldwide, several suppliers of alternative lining technologies, and providers of soil and environmental remediation solutions and products. The building materials product line competes in a highly fragmented market comprised of a wide variety of alternative technologies. A number of integrated bentonite companies compete with our drilling products. Competition for all product lines is based on product quality, service, price, technical support and product availability.

The Energy Services segment competes with other oil and gas services companies. However, the Company believes that the Company offers several competitive advantages, especially in the area of water treatment services, due to superior and innovative technologies that the Company has developed internally and the combination of services that the Company can provide.

Seasonality

Most of the products in the Construction Technologies segment are impacted by weather and soil conditions. Many of the products cannot be applied in wet or winter weather conditions and, as such, sales and profits tend to be greater during the period from April through October. As a result, we consider the business of this segment to be seasonal. Our Processed Minerals product line of our Specialty Minerals segment is subject to similar seasonal patterns.

Much of the business in the Energy Services segment can be impacted by weather conditions. Our business is concentrated in the Gulf of Mexico where our customers' oil and gas production facilities are subject to natural disasters, such as hurricanes. Given this, our Energy Services sales could be lower in the June to November months. However, we can also experience periods of growth after a hurricane as customers require our services to start their operations back up.

Research and Development

Many of the Company's product lines are technologically advanced. The Company's internal research team has dedicated years of experience into analyzing properties of minerals and synthetic materials while developing processes and applications to enhance their performance. Our expertise in inorganic chemistry, crystallography and structural analysis, fine particle technology and other aspects of materials science apply to and support all of our product lines. The Company's business strategy for growth in sales and profitability depends, to a large extent, on the continued success of its research and development activities.

In the Specialty Minerals segment, the significant achievements of the Company's research and development efforts include: the satellite PCC plant concept; PCC crystal morphologies for paper coating; AT[®] PCC for wood-containing papers; FulFill[®] high filler technology systems; New Yield[®]; Integrated PCC Process Technology; and EMforce[®], Optibloc[®] and Titanium Dioxide (TiO₂) extenders for the Processed Minerals and Specialty PCC product lines.

The FulFill[®] brand High Filler Technology is a portfolio of high-filler technologies that offers papermakers a variety of efficient, flexible solutions that decreases dependency on natural fiber and reduces costs. The FulFill[®] E and V series allows papermakers to increase filler loading levels of precipitated calcium carbonate (PCC), which replaces higher cost pulp, and increases PCC usage. Depending on paper grades, this PCC volume increase may range from 15 to 30 percent. The Company continues to progress in the commercialization of FulFill[®]. We have signed agreements with twenty-six paper mills and are actively engaged with additional paper mill sites for further FulFill[®] deployment. Under the FulFill[®] platform of products, the Company continues to develop its filler-fiber composite material and is expanding the technology portfolio for higher filler for fiber replacement with current projects underway.

In the Refractories segment, the Company's achievements include the development of FASTFIRE[®] and OPTIFORM[®] shotcrete refractory products; LACAM[®] laser-based refractory measurement systems; and the MINSCAN[®] and HOTCRETE[®] application systems. The Company will continue to reformulate its refractory materials to be more competitive.

The Company's Performance Materials segment also offers a strong portfolio of custom blended compounds, formulations and technology, which have been primarily developed internally by the Company's research and development efforts. The Additrol[®] formulation, a custom blend, meets the need of both ferrous and non-ferrous applications. The Volclay[®] application is used in green sand molding applications ranging from the production of iron and steel castings to the production of non-ferrous castings. The Hevi-Sand[®] specialty chromite blend prevents metal penetration and can be used with most foundry binders in molds and cores.

Similarly, within the Construction Technologies segment, we offer a strong portfolio of products developed principally by our internal efforts. The Company's RESISTEX[™] and CONTINUUM[®] formulation enables withstanding aggressive leachates. The ORGANOCCLAY[®] technology offers highly effective solutions in removing oils, greases and other high molecular weight, low solubility organic compounds from aqueous streams. The Company will also continue to seek out promising compounds and innovative technologies, developed mainly by our internal research team, to incorporate into our product lines.

For the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, the Company spent approximately \$23.8 million, \$23.6 million and \$24.4 million, respectively, on research and development. The Company's research and development spending for 2016, 2015 and 2014 was approximately 1.5%, 1.3% and 1.4% of net sales, respectively.

The Company maintains its primary research facilities in Bethlehem and Easton, Pennsylvania; Broussard, Louisiana; and Hoffman Estates, Illinois. It also has research and development facilities in China, England, Germany, Ireland, Japan and Turkey. Approximately 139 employees worldwide are engaged in research and development. In addition, the Company has access to some of the world's most advanced papermaking and paper coating pilot facilities.

Patents and Trademarks

The Company owns or has the right to use approximately 452 patents and approximately 1,666 trademarks related to its business. Our patents expire between 2017 and 2036. Our trademarks continue indefinitely. The Company believes that its rights under its existing patents, patent applications and trademarks are of value to its operations, but no one patent, application or trademark is material to the conduct of the Company's business as a whole.

Insurance

The Company maintains liability and property insurance and insurance for business interruption in the event of damage to its production facilities and certain other insurance covering risks associated with its business. The Company believes such insurance is adequate for the operation of its business. There is no assurance that in the future the Company will be able to maintain the coverage currently in place or that the premiums will not increase substantially.

Employees

At December 31, 2016, the Company employed 3,583 persons, of whom 1,876 were employed outside of the United States.

Environmental, Health and Safety Matters

The Company's operations are subject to federal, state, local and foreign laws and regulations relating to the environment and health and safety. In particular, we are subject to certain requirements under the Clean Air Act. In addition, certain of the Company's operations involve and have involved the use and release of substances that have been and are classified as toxic or hazardous within the meaning of these laws and regulations. Environmental operating permits are, or may be, required for certain of the Company's operations and such permits are subject to modification, renewal and revocation. We are also subject to land reclamation requirements. The Company regularly monitors and reviews its operations, procedures and policies for compliance with these laws and regulations. The Company believes its operations are in substantial compliance with these laws and regulations and that there are no violations that would have a material effect on the Company. Despite these compliance efforts, some risk of environmental and other damage is inherent in the Company's operations, as it is with other companies engaged in similar businesses, and there can be no assurance that material violations will not occur in the future. The cost of compliance with these laws and regulations is not expected to have a material adverse effect on the Company.

Laws and regulations are subject to change. See Item 1A, Risk Factors, for information regarding the possible effects that compliance with new environmental laws and regulations, including those relating to climate change, may have on our businesses and operating results.

Under the terms of certain agreements entered into in connection with the Company's initial public offering in 1992, Pfizer Inc. ("Pfizer") agreed to indemnify the Company against certain liabilities being retained by Pfizer and its subsidiaries including, but not limited to, pending lawsuits and claims, and any lawsuits or claims brought at any time in the future alleging damages or injury from the use, handling of or exposure to any product sold by Pfizer's specialty minerals business prior to the closing of the initial public offering.

Available Information

The Company maintains an internet website located at <http://www.mineralstech.com>. Its reports on Forms 10-K, 10-Q and 8-K, and amendments to those reports, as well as its Proxy Statement and filings under Section 16 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 are available free of charge through the Investor Relations page of its website, as soon as reasonably practicable after they are filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"). Investors may access these reports through the Company's website by navigating to "Investor Relations" and then to "SEC Filings."

Financial information concerning our business segments and the geographical areas in which we operate appears in the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements. Information related to our executive officers is included in Item 10, "Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance."

Item 1A. Risk Factors

Our business faces significant risks. Set forth below are all risks that we believe are material at this time. Our business, financial condition and results of operations could be materially adversely affected by any of these risks. These risks should be read in conjunction with the other information in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

- ***Worldwide general economic, business, and industry conditions have had, and may continue to have, an adverse effect on the Company's results.***

The global economic instability experienced in recent years had caused, among other things, declining consumer and business confidence, volatile raw material prices, instability in credit markets, high unemployment, fluctuating interest and exchange rates, and other challenges. The Company's business and operating results had been and could once again be adversely affected by these global economic conditions. The Company's customers and potential customers may experience deterioration of their businesses, cash flow shortages, and difficulty obtaining financing. As discussed below, the industries we serve have in the past been adversely affected by the uncertain global economic climate due to the cyclical nature of their businesses. As a result, existing or potential customers may reduce or delay their growth and investments and their plans to purchase products, and may not be able to fulfill their obligations in a timely fashion. Further, suppliers could experience similar conditions, which could affect their ability to fulfill their obligations to the Company. Adversity within capital markets may also impact the Company's results of operations by negatively affecting the amount of expense the Company records for its pension and other postretirement benefit plans. Actuarial valuations used to calculate income or expense for the plans reflect assumptions about financial market and other economic conditions – the most significant of which are the discount rate and the expected long-term rate of return on plan assets. Such actuarial valuations may change based on changes in key economic indicators. Global economic markets remain uncertain, and there can be no assurance that market conditions will improve in the near future. Future weakness in the global economy could materially and adversely affect our business and operating results.

- ***Our customers' businesses are cyclical or have changing regional demands. Our operations are subject to these trends and we may not be able to mitigate these risks.***
 - Our Performance Materials segment's sales are predominantly derived from the metalcasting market. The metalcasting market is dependent upon the demand for castings for automobile components, farm and construction equipment, oil and gas production equipment, power generation turbine castings, and rail car components. Many of these types of equipment are sensitive to fluctuations in demand during periods of recession or tough economies, which ultimately may affect the demand for our Construction Technologies and Performance Materials segments' products and services.
 - In the paper industry, which is served by our Paper PCC product line, production levels for uncoated freesheet within North America and Europe, our two largest markets are projected to continue to decrease. The reduced demand for premium writing paper products has also caused the paper industry to experience a number of bankruptcies and paper mill closures, including amongst our customers.
 - Our Refractories segment primarily serves the steel industry. North American and European steel production continues to be affected by global volatility and overcapacity in the market.
 - Demand for our Energy Services segment's products and services is affected by the level of exploration, development, and production activity of, and the corresponding capital spending by, oil and natural gas companies, which are heavily influenced by the benchmark price of these commodities. Oil and natural gas prices decreased significantly in 2014 and 2015, with West Texas Intermediate (WTI) oil spot prices declining from a high of \$108 per barrel in June 2014 to a low of \$26 per barrel in February 2016. This has caused oil and natural gas companies to reduce their capital expenditures and production and exploration activities. This has the effect of decreasing the demand and increasing competition for the services we provide. In addition, the performance of our Energy Services segment is affected by changes in technologies, locations of customers' targeted reserves, and competition in various geographic markets.
 - Our Construction Technologies segment's sales are predominantly derived from the commercial construction and infrastructure markets. In addition, our Processed Minerals and Specialty PCC product lines are affected by the domestic building and construction markets, as well as the automotive market.

Demand for our products is subject to trends in these markets. During periods of economic slowdown, our customers often reduce their capital expenditures and defer or cancel pending projects. Such developments occur even amongst customers that are not experiencing financial difficulties. In addition, these trends could cause our customers to face liquidity issues or bankruptcy, which could deteriorate the aging of our accounts receivable, increase our bad debt exposure and possibly trigger impairment of assets or realignment of our businesses. The Company has taken steps to reduce its exposure to variations in its customers' businesses, including by diversifying its portfolio of products and services; through geographic expansion, and by structuring most of its long-term satellite PCC contracts to provide a degree of protection against declines in the quantity of product purchased, since the price per ton of PCC generally rises as the number of tons purchased declines. In addition, many of the Company's product lines lower its customers' costs of production or increase their productivity, which should encourage them to use its products. However, there can be no assurance that these efforts will mitigate the risks of our dependence on these industries. Continued weakness in the industries we serve has had, and may in the future have, an adverse effect on sales of our products and our results of operations. A continued or renewed economic downturn in one or more of the industries or geographic regions that the Company serves, or in the worldwide economy, could cause actual results of operations to differ materially from historical and expected results.

- ***The Company's results could be adversely affected if it is unable to effectively achieve and implement its growth initiatives.***

Sales and income growth of the Company depends upon a number of uncertain events, including the outcome of the Company's strategies of increasing its penetration into geographic markets such as the BRIC (Brazil, Russia, India, China) countries and other Asian and Eastern European countries; increasing its penetration into product markets such as the market for papercoating pigments and the market for groundwood paper pigments; increasing sales to existing PCC customers by increasing the amount of PCC used per ton of paper produced; developing, introducing and selling new products such as the FulFill® family of products for the paper industry. Difficulties, delays or failure of any of these strategies could affect the future growth rate of the Company. Our strategy also anticipates growth through future acquisitions. However, our ability to identify and consummate any future acquisitions on terms that are favorable to us may be limited by the number of attractive acquisition targets, internal demands on our resources and our ability to obtain financing. Our success in integrating newly acquired businesses will depend upon our ability to retain key personnel, avoid diversion of management's attention from operational matters, and integrate general and administrative services. In addition, future acquisitions could result in the incurrence of additional debt, costs and contingent liabilities. Integration of acquired operations may take longer, or be more costly or disruptive to our business, than originally anticipated, and it is also possible that expected synergies from future acquisitions may not materialize. We also may incur costs and divert management attention with regard to potential acquisitions that are never consummated.

- ***Servicing the Company's debt will require a significant amount of cash. This could reduce the Company's flexibility to respond to changing business and economic conditions or fund capital expenditures or working capital needs. Our ability to generate cash depends on many factors beyond our control.***

At December 31, 2016, the Company had outstanding borrowings of \$1.1 billion pursuant to our senior secured credit facility, largely incurred to finance the acquisition of AMCOL. This financing will require a significant amount of cash to make interest payments. Further, the interest rate on a significant portion of our borrowings under our senior secured credit facility is based on LIBOR interest rates, which could result in higher interest expense in the event of an increase in interest rates. Our ability to pay interest on our debt and to satisfy our other debt obligations will depend in part upon our future financial and operating performance and upon our ability to renew or refinance borrowings. Prevailing economic conditions and financial, business, competitive, regulatory and other factors, many of which are beyond our control, will affect our ability to make these payments. We cannot guarantee that our business will generate sufficient cash flow from operations or that future borrowings will be available to us in an amount sufficient to enable us to fund our liquidity needs. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flow to meet our debt service obligations, we will have to pursue one or more alternatives, such as reducing or delaying capital or other expenditures, refinancing debt, selling assets, or raising equity capital. Further, the requirement to make significant interest payments may reduce the Company's flexibility to respond to changing business and economic conditions or fund capital expenditure or working capital needs and may increase the Company's vulnerability to adverse economic conditions.

- ***Our senior secured credit facility contains various covenants that limit our ability to take certain actions and our revolving credit facility, if used, also requires us to meet financial maintenance tests, failure to comply with which could have a material adverse effect on us.***

The agreement governing our senior secured credit facility contains a number of significant covenants that, among other things, limit our ability to: incur additional debt or liens, consolidate or merge with any other person, alter the business we conduct, make investments, use the proceeds of asset sales or sale/leaseback transactions, enter into hedging arrangements, pay dividends or make certain other restricted payments, create dividend or other payment restrictions with respect to subsidiaries, and enter into transactions with affiliates. In addition, our revolving credit facility, if used, requires us to comply with specific financial ratios, including a maximum net leverage ratio, under which we are required to achieve specific financial results. Our ability to comply with these provisions may be affected by events beyond our control. A breach of any of these covenants would result in a default under the agreements. In the event of any default, our lenders could elect to declare all amounts borrowed under the agreements, together with accrued interest thereon, to be due and payable. In such an event, we cannot assure you that we would have sufficient assets to pay debt then outstanding under the agreements governing our debt. Any future refinancing of the senior secured credit facility is likely to contain similar restrictive covenants.

- ***The Company's sales of PCC could be adversely affected by our failure to renew or extend long term sales contracts for our satellite operations.***

The Company's sales of PCC to paper customers are typically pursuant to long-term evergreen agreements, initially ten years in length, with paper mills where the Company operates satellite PCC plants. Sales pursuant to these contracts represent a significant portion of our worldwide Paper PCC sales, which were \$387.9 million in 2016, or approximately 24% of the Company's net sales. The terms of many of these agreements have been extended or renewed in the past, often in connection with an expansion of the satellite plant. However, failure of a number of the Company's customers to renew or extend existing agreements on terms as favorable to the Company as those currently in effect, or at all, could have a substantial adverse effect on the Company's results of operations, and could also result in impairment of the assets associated with the PCC plant.

- ***The Company's sales could be adversely affected by consolidation in customer industries, principally paper, foundry and steel.***

Several consolidations in the paper industry have taken place in recent years and such consolidation could continue in the future. These consolidations could result in partial or total closure of some paper mills where the Company operates PCC satellites. Such closures would reduce the Company's sales of PCC, except to the extent that they resulted in shifting paper production and associated purchases of PCC to another location served by the Company. Similarly, consolidations have occurred in the foundry and steel industries. Such consolidations in the major industries we serve concentrate purchasing power in the hands of a smaller number of manufacturers, enabling them to increase pressure on suppliers, such as the Company. This increased pressure could have an adverse effect on the Company's results of operations in the future.

- ***The Company is subject to stringent regulation in the areas of environmental, health and safety, and tax, and may incur unanticipated costs or liabilities arising out of claims for various legal, environmental and tax matters or product stewardship issues.***

The Company's operations are subject to international, federal, state and local governmental environmental, health and safety, tax and other laws and regulations. We have expended, and may be required to expend in the future, substantial funds for compliance with such laws and regulations. In addition, future events, such as changes to or modifications of interpretations of existing laws and regulations, or enforcement policies, or further investigation or evaluation of the potential environmental impacts of operations or health hazards of certain products, may affect our mining rights or give rise to additional compliance and other costs that could have a material adverse effect on the Company. Further, certain of our customers are subject to various federal and international laws and regulations relating to environmental and health and safety matters, especially our Energy Services customers who are subject to drilling permits, waste water disposal and other regulations. To the extent that these laws and regulations affecting our customers change, demand for our products and services could also change and thereby affect our financial results. State, national, and international governments and agencies have been evaluating climate-related legislation and regulation that would restrict emissions of greenhouse gases in areas in which we conduct business, and some such legislation and regulation have already been enacted or adopted. Enactment of climate-related legislation or adoption of regulation that restrict emissions of greenhouse gases in areas in which we conduct business could have an adverse effect on our operations or demand for our products. Our manufacturing processes, particularly the manufacturing process for PCC, use a significant amount of energy and, should energy prices increase as a result of such legislation or regulation, we may not be able to pass these increased costs on to purchasers of our products. We cannot predict if or when currently proposed or additional laws and regulations regarding climate change or other environmental or health and safety concerns will be enacted or adopted. Moreover, changes in tax regulation and international tax treaties could reduce the financial performance of our foreign operations.

The Company is currently a party in various litigation matters and tax and environmental proceedings and faces risks arising from various unasserted litigation matters, including, but not limited to, product liability, patent infringement, antitrust claims, and claims for third party property damage or personal injury stemming from alleged environmental torts. Failure to appropriately manage safety, human health, product liability and environmental risks associated with the Company's products and production processes could adversely impact the Company's employees and other stakeholders, the Company's reputation and its results of operations. Public perception of the risks associated with the Company's products and production processes could impact product acceptance and influence the regulatory environment in which the Company operates. While the Company has procedures and controls to manage these risks, carries liability insurance, which it believes to be appropriate to its businesses, and has provided reserves for current matters, which it believes to be adequate, an unanticipated liability, arising out of a current matter or proceeding or from the other risks described above, could have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial condition or results of operations.

- ***Delays or failures in new product development could adversely affect the Company's operations.***

The Company's future business success will depend in part upon its ability to maintain and enhance its technological capabilities, to respond to changing customer needs, and to successfully anticipate or respond to technological changes on a cost-effective and timely basis. The Company is engaged in a continuous effort to develop new products and processes in all of its product lines. Difficulties, delays or failures in the development, testing, production, marketing or sale of such new products could cause actual results of operations to differ materially from our expected results.

- ***The Company's ability to compete is dependent upon its ability to defend its intellectual property against inappropriate disclosure and infringement.***

The Company's ability to compete is based in part upon proprietary knowledge, both patented and unpatented. The Company's ability to achieve anticipated results depends in part on its ability to defend its intellectual property against inappropriate disclosure as well as against infringement. In addition, development by the Company's competitors of new products or technologies that are more effective or less expensive than those the Company offers could have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial condition or results of operations.

- ***The Company's operations could be impacted by the increased risks of doing business abroad.***

The Company does business in many areas internationally. Approximately 43% of our sales in 2016 were derived from outside the United States and we have significant production facilities which are located outside of the United States. We have in recent years expanded our operations in emerging markets, and we plan to continue to do so in the future, particularly in China, India, Brazil, the Middle East, and Eastern Europe. Some of our operations are located in areas that have experienced political or economic instability, including Indonesia, Malaysia, Nigeria, Egypt, Saudi Arabia, Turkey, Brazil, Thailand, China and South Africa. The June 23, 2016 referendum by British voters to exit the European Union (referred to as Brexit) has caused additional volatility in the markets and currency exchange rates. Market conditions and exchange rates could continue to be volatile in the near term as this situation develops over the next couple of years. As the Company expands its operations overseas, it faces increased risks of doing business abroad, including inflation, fluctuation in interest rates, changes in applicable laws and regulatory requirements, export and import restrictions, tariffs, nationalization, expropriation, limits on repatriation of funds, civil unrest, terrorism, unstable governments and legal systems, and other factors. Many of these risks are beyond our control and can lead to sudden, and potentially prolonged, changes in demand for our products, difficulty in enforcing agreements, and losses in the realizability of our assets. Adverse developments in any of the areas in which we do business could cause actual results to differ materially from historical and expected results. In addition, a significant portion of our raw material purchases and sales outside the United States are denominated in foreign currencies, and liabilities for non-U.S. operating expenses and income taxes are denominated in local currencies. Accordingly, reported sales, net earnings, cash flows and fair values have been and, in the future, will be affected by changes in foreign currency exchange rates. Our overall success as a global business depends, in part, upon our ability to succeed in differing legal, regulatory, economic, social and political conditions. We cannot assure you that we will implement policies and strategies that will be effective in each location where we do business.

- ***The Company's operations are dependent on the availability of raw materials and access to ore reserves at its mining operations. Increases in costs of raw materials, energy, or shipping could adversely affect our financial results.***

The Company depends in part on having an adequate supply of raw materials for its manufacturing operations, particularly lime and carbon dioxide for the PCC product line, and magnesia and alumina for its Refractory operations. Purchase prices and availability of these critical raw materials are subject to volatility. At any given time, we may be unable to obtain an adequate supply of these critical raw materials on a timely basis, on price and other terms, or at all. While most such raw materials are readily available, the Company purchases approximately 45% of its magnesia requirements from sources in China. The majority of magnesia requirements were purchased from other countries. The price and availability of magnesia have fluctuated in the past and they may fluctuate in the future. Price increases for certain other of our raw materials, including petrochemical products, as well as increases in energy prices, have also affected our business. Our production processes consume a significant amount of energy, primarily electricity, diesel fuel, natural gas and coal. We use diesel fuel to operate our mining and processing equipment and our freight costs are heavily dependent upon fuel prices and surcharges. Energy costs also affect the cost of raw materials. On a combined basis, these factors represent a large exposure to petrochemical and energy products which may be subject to significant price fluctuations. The contracts pursuant to which we construct and operate our satellite PCC plants generally adjust pricing to reflect the pass-through of increases in costs resulting from inflation, including energy. However, there is a time lag before such price adjustments can be implemented. The Company and its customers will typically negotiate reasonable price adjustments in order to recover these escalating costs, but there can be no assurance that we will be able to recover increasing costs through such negotiations.

The Company also depends on having adequate access to ore reserves of appropriate quality at its mining operations. There are numerous uncertainties inherent in estimating ore reserves including subjective judgments and determinations that are based on available geological, technical, contract and economic information.

The Company relies on shipping bulk cargos of bentonite from the United States, Turkey and China to customers, as well as our own subsidiaries, and we are sensitive to our ability to recover these shipping costs. In the last few years, bulk cargo shipping rates have been very volatile, and, to a lesser extent, the availability of bulk cargo containers has been suspect. If we cannot secure our container requirements or offset additional shipping costs with price increases to customers, our profitability could be impacted. We are also subject to other shipping risks. In particular, rail service interruptions have affected our ability to ship, and the availability of rail service, and our ability to recover increased rail costs, may be beyond our control.

- ***The Company operates in very competitive industries, which could adversely affect our profitability.***

The Company has many competitors. Some of our principal competitors have greater financial and other resources than we have. Accordingly, these competitors may be better able to withstand economic downturns and changes in conditions within the industries in which we operate and may have significantly greater operating and financial flexibility than we do. We also face competition for some of our products from alternative products, and some of the competition we face comes from competitors in lower-cost production countries like China and India. As a result of the competitive environment in the markets in which we operate, we currently face and will continue to face pressure on the sales prices of our products from competitors, which could reduce profit margins.

- ***Production facilities are subject to operating risks and capacity limitations that may adversely affect the Company's financial condition or results of operations.***

The Company is dependent on the continued operation of its production facilities. Production facilities are subject to hazards associated with the manufacturing, handling, storage, and transportation of chemical materials and products, including pipeline leaks and ruptures, explosions, fires, inclement weather and natural disasters, mechanical failure, unscheduled downtime, labor difficulties, transportation interruptions, and environmental risks. We maintain property, business interruption and casualty insurance but such insurance may not cover all risks associated with the hazards of our business and is subject to limitations, including deductibles and maximum liabilities covered. We may incur losses beyond the limits, or outside the coverage, of our insurance policies. Further, from time to time, we may experience capacity limitations in our manufacturing operations. In addition, if we are unable to effectively forecast our customers' demand, it could affect our ability to successfully manage operating capacity limitations. These hazards, limitations, disruptions in supply and capacity constraints could adversely affect financial results.

- ***Operating results for some of our segments are seasonal.***

Our Energy Services and Construction Technologies segments are affected by seasonal weather patterns. A majority of our Energy Services revenues are derived from the Gulf of Mexico and surrounding states, which are susceptible to hurricanes that typically occur June 1st through November 30th. In addition, it is affected by customers' demands for natural gas. Natural gas is affected by weather patterns as colder winters increase the demand for natural gas to heat homes and warmer summers increase the demand for natural gas to fuel generators providing electricity to run air conditioners. Actual or threatened hurricanes or changes in the demand for natural gas can result in volatile demand for services provided by our Energy Services segment. Our Construction Technologies segment is affected by weather patterns which determine the feasibility of construction activities. Typically, less construction activity occurs in winter months and thus this segment's revenues tend to be greatest in the second and third quarters when weather patterns in our geographic markets are more conducive to construction activities. Our Processed Minerals product line is subject to similar seasonal patterns.

- ***Our operations are subject to cyber-attacks that could have a material adverse impact on our business, consolidated results of operations, and consolidated financial condition.***

Our operations are becoming increasingly dependent on digital technologies and services. We use these technologies for internal purposes, including data storage, processing, and transmissions, as well as in our interactions with customers and suppliers. Digital technologies are subject to the risk of cyber-attacks. If our systems for protecting against cybersecurity risks prove not to be sufficient, we could be adversely affected by, among other things: loss of or damage to intellectual property, proprietary or confidential information, or customer, supplier, or employee data; interruption of our business operations; and increased costs required to prevent, respond to, or mitigate cybersecurity attacks. These risks could harm our reputation and our relationships with customers, suppliers, employees, and other third parties, and may result in claims against us. In addition, these risks could have a material adverse effect on our business, consolidated results of operations, and consolidated financial condition.

Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments

None.

Item 2. Properties

The Company's corporate headquarters, sales offices, research laboratories, plants, mines and other facilities are owned by the Company except as otherwise noted. Set forth below is certain information relating to the Company's principal plants and office and research facilities.

Location	Facility	Product Line	Segment
United States			
Alabama, Sandy Ridge	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting, basic minerals and specialty products	Performance Materials
Arizona, Pima County	Plant; Mine ¹	Limestone	Specialty Minerals
California, Lucerne Valley	Plant; Mine	Limestone	Specialty Minerals
Connecticut, Canaan	Plant; Mine	Limestone, Metallurgical Wire/Calcium	Specialty Minerals; Refractories
Georgia, Cartersville	Plant	Environmental products and other building materials products	Construction Technologies
Illinois, Hoffman Estates	Research laboratories; Administrative office ²	All Company Products	All Segments
Indiana, Portage	Plant	Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
Louisiana, Baton Rouge	Plant	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Louisiana, Broussard	Research laboratories ²	Filtration and well testing services	Energy Services
Houston, TX	Headquarter, Administrative Office ²		Energy Services
Louisiana, New Iberia	Operations base ²	Filtration and Well testing services	OilfieldSeg - Energy Services
Massachusetts, Adams	Plant; Mine	Limestone, Lime, PCC	Specialty Minerals
Montana, Dillon	Plant; Mine	Talc	Specialty Minerals
Nebraska, Scottsbluff	Transportation terminal		Performance Materials and Construction Technologies
New York, New York	Headquarters ²	All Company Products	Headquarters
North Dakota, Gascoyne	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting, basic minerals and specialty products	Performance Materials
Ohio, Bryan	Plant	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Ohio, Dover	Plant	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
Pennsylvania, Bethlehem	Administrative Office; Research laboratories; Sales Offices	All Company Products	All Segments
Pennsylvania, Easton	Administrative Office; Research laboratories; Plant; Sales Offices	All Company Products	All Segments
Pennsylvania, Slippery Rock	Plant; Sales Offices	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
Texas, Bay City	Plant	Talc	Specialty Minerals
Wyoming, Colony	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting, pet litter, personal care, specialty and basic minerals products	MineralsSeg - Performance Materials
Wyoming, Lovell	Plant; Mine	Basic minerals, Specialty and pet care products; Environmental and building materials products	Performance Materials and Construction Technologies

[Table of Contents](#)

Location	Facility	Product Line	Segment
International			
Australia, Carlingford	Sales Office ²	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Australia, Perth	Operations base ²	Filtration services	Energy Services
Belgium, Brussels	Administrative Office	Monolithic Refractories/PCC	Refractories
Brazil, Macae	Operations base ²	Filtration services	Energy Services
Brazil, Sao Jose dos Campos	Sales Office ² /Administrative Office	PCC	Specialty Minerals
Canada, Pt. Claire	Administrative Office	PCC/Monolithic Refractories	Specialty Minerals; Refractories
China, Chao Yang, Liaoning	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting and fabric care products	Performance Materials
China, Shanghai	Administrative Office/Sales Office	PCC/Monolithic Refractories	Specialty Minerals; Refractories
China, Suzhou	Plant	Environmental and building materials products	Construction Technologies
China, Suzhou	Plant/Sales Office/Research laboratories	PCC/Monolithic Refractories	Specialty Minerals; Refractories
China, Tianjin	Plant; Mine; Research laboratories	Metalcasting and fabric care products	Performance Materials
Germany, Duisburg	Plant/Sales Office/Research laboratories	Laser Scanning Instrumentation/ Probes/Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Holland, Hengelo	Plant/Sales Office	Metallurgical Wire	Refractories
India, Mumbai	Sales Office ² /Administrative Office	PCC/Monolithic Refractories/ Metallurgical Wire	Specialty Minerals; Refractories
Indonesia, Jakarta	Operations base ²	Filtration services	Energy Services
Ireland, Cork	Plant; Administrative Office ² / Research laboratories	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Italy, Brescia	Sales Office	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
Italy, Nave	Plant	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
Japan, Gamagori	Plant/Research laboratories	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes, Calcium	Refractories
Japan, Tokyo	Sales Office	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Korea, Pyeongtaek	Plant	Environmental, building materials and other products	Construction Technologies
Malaysia, Kenamen	Operations base ²	Filtration and well testing services	Energy Services
Mexico, Villahermosa	Operations base ²	Filtration services	Energy Services
Nigeria, Port Harcourt	Operations base ²	Well Testing services	Energy Services
Poland, Szczytno	Plant	Environmental products	Construction Technologies
Scotland, Aberdeen	Operations base ²	Filtration services	Energy Services
Singapore	Sales Office ² /Administrative Office	PCC	Specialty Minerals
South Africa, Johannesburg	Sales Office/Administrative Office ²	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
South Africa, Pietermaritzburg	Plant	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
South Africa, Ruighoek Farm, Northwest Province	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting and basic minerals products	Performance Materials
South Korea, Yangbuk-Myeun, Kyeong-buk	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting products	Performance Materials
Spain, Cheste	Plant	Environmental products	Construction Technologies
Spain, Santander	Sales Office ² /Administrative Office	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Thailand, Laemchabang	Plant	Metalcasting and fabric care products	Performance Materials
Turkey, Enez	Plant; Mine	Metalcasting, specialty and basic minerals products	Performance Materials
Turkey, Gebze	Plant/Research Laboratories	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes/ Application Equipment	Refractories
Turkey, Istanbul	Sales Office/Administrative Office	Monolithic Refractories	Refractories
Turkey, Kutahya	Plant	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
United Kingdom, Birkenhead	Research laboratories ²	Environmental products	Performance Materials and Construction Technologies
United Kingdom, Lifford	Plant	PCC, Lime	Specialty Minerals
United Kingdom, Rotherham	Plant/Sales Office	Monolithic Refractories/Shapes	Refractories
United Kingdom, Winsford	Plant, Research laboratories	Fabric care and other products	Performance Materials

¹ This plant and quarry is leased to another company.

² Leased by the Company. The facilities in Cork, Ireland, are operated pursuant to a 99-year lease, the term of which commenced in 1963. The Company's headquarters in New York, New York, are held under a lease which expires in 2021.

[Table of Contents](#)

Set forth below is the location of, and the main customer served by, each of the Company's satellite PCC plants in operation or under construction, within the Specialty Minerals segment, as of December 31, 2016. Generally, the land on which each satellite PCC plant is located is leased at a nominal amount by the Company from the host paper mill pursuant to a lease, the term of which generally runs concurrently with the term of the PCC production and sale agreement between the Company and the host paper mill.

Location	Principal Customer
United States	
Alabama, Jackson	Boise Inc.
Alabama, Selma	International Paper Company
Arkansas, Ashdown	Domtar Inc.
Florida, Pensacola	Georgia-Pacific Corporation (Koch Industries)
Louisiana, Port Hudson	Georgia-Pacific Corporation (Koch Industries)
Maine, Jay	Verso Paper Holdings LLC
Michigan, Quinnesec	Verso Paper Holdings LLC
Minnesota, Cloquet	Sappi Ltd.
Minnesota, International Falls	Boise Inc.
New York, Ticonderoga	International Paper Company
Ohio, Chillicothe	P.H. Glatfelter Co.
South Carolina, Eastover	International Paper Company
Washington, Camas	Georgia-Pacific Corporation (Koch Industries)
Washington, Longview	North Pacific Paper Corporation
Washington, Wallula	Boise Inc.
Wisconsin, Kimberly	Appleton Coated
Wisconsin, Park Falls	Flambeau River Papers LLC
Wisconsin, Superior	New Page Corporation
Wisconsin, Wisconsin Rapids	New Page Corporation

Table of Contents

Location	Principal Customer
International	
Brazil, Guaiba	CMPC - Celulose Rio Grandense
Brazil, Jacarei	Munksjo Brasil Ind e Com de Papeis Especiais Ltda.
Brazil, Luiz Antonio	International Paper do Brasil Ltda.
Brazil, Mucuri	Suzano Papel e Celulose S. A.
Brazil, Suzano	Suzano Papel e Celulose S. A.
Canada, St. Jerome, Quebec	Les Entreprises Rolland Inc
Canada, Windsor, Quebec	Domtar Inc.
China, Dagang ¹	Gold East Paper (Jiangsu) Company Ltd.
China, Zhenjiang ¹	Gold East Paper (Jiangsu) Company Ltd.
China, Suzhou ¹	Gold HuaSheng Paper Company Ltd.
China, Henan	Henan Jianghe Paper Co., Ltd.
China, Guangxi ^{1, 2}	Nanning Jindaxing Paper Industry Company Ltd
China, Shandong ²	Shandong Sun Paper Industry Joint Stock Company Ltd
Finland, Äänekoski	M-real Corporation
Finland, Tervakoski	Trierenberg Holding
France, Alizay	Double A Paper Company Ltd.
France, Saillat Sur Vienne	International Paper Company
Germany, Schongau	UPM Corporation
India, Ballarshah ¹	Ballarpur Industries Ltd.
India, Dandeli	West Coast Paper Mill Ltd.
India, Gaganapur ¹	Ballarpur Industries Ltd.
India, Saila Khurd	Kuantum Papers Ltd.
India, Rayagada ¹	JK Paper
Indonesia, Perawang ¹	PT Indah Kiat Pulp and Paper Corporation
Japan, Shiraoui ¹	Nippon Paper Group Inc.
Malaysia, Sipitang	Ballarpur Industries Ltd.
Poland, Kwidzyn	International Paper – Kwidzyn, S.A
Portugal, Figueira da Foz ¹	Navigator Paper Figueira, S.A.
Slovakia, Ruzomberok	Mondi Business Paper SCP
South Africa, Merebank ¹	Mondi Paper Company Ltd.
Thailand, Namphong	Phoenix Pulp & Paper Public Co. Ltd.
Thailand, Tha Toom ¹	Double A Paper Company Ltd.
Thailand, Tha Toom ²	Double A Paper Company Ltd.

¹ These plants are owned through joint ventures.

² These plants are under construction.

[Table of Contents](#)

The following table sets forth, for each of the quarries or mines we own or operate, our current estimate as to the amount of proven and probable reserves such quarry or mine holds, based on the most recent mine plan, its usage rate in 2016, and a conversion factor for the conversion of in-situ materials to saleable products, by major mineral category.

	2016 Tons Usage (000s)	Total Tons of Reserves (000s)	Assigned Reserves (000s)	Unassigned Reserves** (000s)	Conversion Factor	Mining Claims		
						Owned	Unpatented *	Leased
Limestone								
Adams, MA	630	24,388	24,388	-	80%	24,388	-	-
Canaan, CT	594	18,910	18,910	-	90%	18,910	-	-
Lucerne Valley, CA	938	42,729	42,729	-	95%	42,729	-	-
Pima County, AZ	190	8,129	8,129	-	90%	8,129	-	-
Total Limestone	2,352	94,156	94,156	-		94,156	-	-
			100%	0%		100%	0%	0%
Talc								
Dillon, MT	215	3,038	3,038	-	85%	3,038	-	-
			100%	0%		100%	0%	0%
Sodium Bentonite								
Australia	21	1,259	1,259	-	80%	-	-	1,259
Belle/Colony, WY/SD	1,306	67,027	67,027	-	77%	3,894	11,952	51,181
Lovell, WY	561	38,258	38,258	-	86%	17,468	14,371	6,419
Other SD, WY, MT	-	72,831	-	72,831	79%	54,815	15,048	2,968
Total Sodium Bentonite	1,888	179,375	106,544	72,831		76,177	41,371	61,827
			59%	41%		42%	23%	34%
Calcium Bentonite								
Chao Yang, Liaoning, China	33	1,772	1,772	-	78%	-	-	1,772
Nevada	1	1,561	1,561	-	76%	1,017	44	500
Sandy Ridge, AL	111	6,763	6,763	-	75%	1,995	-	4,768
Turkey	159	4,945	4,945	-	77%	-	-	4,945
Total Calcium Bentonite	304	15,041	15,041	-		3,012	44	11,985
			100%	0%		20%	0%	80%
Leonardite								
Gascoyne, ND	28	2,707	2,707	-	72%	-	2,019	688
			100%	0%		-	75%	25%
Chromite								
South Africa	80	3,654	3,654	-	75%	-	-	3,654
			100%	0%		0%	0%	100%
Other								
Nevada**	-	2,997	-	2,997	80%	-	2,997	-
			0%	100%		0%	100%	0%
GRAND TOTALS	4,867	300,968	225,140	75,828		176,383	46,431	78,154
			75%	25%		59%	15%	26%

* Quantity of reserves that would be owned if patent was granted.

** Unassigned reserves are reserves which we expect will require additional expenditures for processing facilities.

Our estimates of total reserves in the table above require us to make certain key assumptions. These assumptions relate to consistency of deposits in relation to drilling samples obtained with respect to both quantity and quality of reserves contained therein; the ratio of overburden to mineral deposits; any environmental or social impact of mining the minerals; and profitability of extracting those minerals, including haul distance to processing plants, applicability of minerals to various end markets and selling prices within those markets, and our past experiences in the deposits, several of which we have been operating in for many decades.

The Company believes that its facilities, which are of varying ages and are of different construction types, have been satisfactorily maintained, are in good condition, are suitable for the Company's operations and generally provide sufficient capacity to meet the Company's production requirements. Based on past loss experience, the Company believes it is adequately insured with respect to these assets and for liabilities likely to arise from its operations.

Item 3. Legal Proceedings

The Company and its subsidiaries are the subject of various pending legal actions in the ordinary course of their businesses. Except as described below, none of such legal proceedings are material.

Armada Litigation

On May 8, 2013, Armada (Singapore) PTE Limited, an ocean shipping company now in bankruptcy ("Armada") filed a case in federal court in the Northern District of Illinois against AMCOL and certain of its subsidiaries (*Armada (Singapore) PTE Limited v. AMCOL International Corp., et al., United States District Court for the Northern District of Illinois*, Case No. 13 CV 3455). We acquired AMCOL and its subsidiaries on May 9, 2014. A co-defendant is Ashapura Minechem Limited, a company located in Mumbai, India ("AML"). During the relevant time period, 2008-2010, AMCOL owned slightly over 20% of the outstanding AML stock through December 2009, after which it owned approximately 19%. In 2008, AML entered into two contracts of affreightment ("COA") with Armada for over 60 ship loads of bauxite from India to China. After one shipment, AML made no further shipments, which led Armada to file arbitrations in London against AML, one for each COA. AML did not appear in the London arbitrations and default awards of approximately \$70 million were entered. The litigation filed by Armada against AMCOL and AML relates to these awards, which AML has not paid. The substance of the allegations by Armada is that AML and AMCOL engaged in illegal conduct to thwart Armada's efforts to collect the arbitration award. The counts in the complaint include both violations of the Illinois Fraudulent Transfer laws, as well as federal RICO violations. The lawsuit seeks money damages, as well as injunctive relief. Fact discovery is scheduled to close in the first quarter of 2017. We have accrued an estimate of potential damages for the Armada lawsuit, the amount of which was not material to our financial position, results of operations or cash flows.

Silica and Asbestos Litigation

Certain of the Company's subsidiaries are among numerous defendants in a number of cases seeking damages for exposure to silica or to asbestos containing materials. The Company currently has three pending silica cases and 18 pending asbestos cases. To date, 1,492 silica cases and 48 asbestos cases have been dismissed, not including any lawsuits against AMCOL or American Colloid Company dismissed prior to our acquisition of AMCOL. Six new asbestos cases were filed in the period, including three new cases in the fourth quarter of 2016, and one additional case in the first quarter of 2017. No asbestos or silica cases were closed during the fourth quarter, however, as previously reported, twenty-seven silica cases and two asbestos cases were closed during 2016. Most of these claims do not provide adequate information to assess their merits, the likelihood that the Company will be found liable, or the magnitude of such liability, if any. Additional claims of this nature may be made against the Company or its subsidiaries. At this time, management anticipates that the amount of the Company's liability, if any, and the cost of defending such claims, will not have a material effect on its financial position or results of operations.

The Company has settled only one silica lawsuit, for a nominal amount, and no asbestos lawsuits to date (not including any that may have been settled by AMCOL prior to completion of the acquisition). We are unable to state an amount or range of amounts claimed in any of the lawsuits because state court pleading practices do not require identifying the amount of the claimed damage. The aggregate cost to the Company for the legal defense of these cases since inception continues to be insignificant. The majority of the costs of defense for these cases, excluding cases against AMCOL or American Colloid, are reimbursed by Pfizer Inc. pursuant to the terms of certain agreements entered into in connection with the Company's initial public offering in 1992. Of the 18 pending asbestos cases all except two allege liability based on products sold largely or entirely prior to the initial public offering, and for which the Company is therefore entitled to indemnification pursuant to such agreements. The two exceptions pertain to a pending asbestos case against American Colloid Company, and one for which no period of alleged exposure has been stated by plaintiffs. Our experience has been that the Company is not liable to plaintiffs in any of these lawsuits and the Company does not expect to pay any settlements or jury verdicts in these lawsuits.

Environmental Matters

On April 9, 2003, the Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection issued an administrative consent order relating to our Canaan, Connecticut, plant where both our Refractories segment and Specialty Minerals segment have operations. We agreed to the order, which includes provisions requiring investigation and remediation of contamination associated with historic use of polychlorinated biphenyls ("PCBs") and mercury at a portion of the site. We have completed the required investigations and submitted several reports characterizing the contamination and assessing site-specific risks. We are awaiting regulators' approval of the risk assessment report, which will form the basis for a proposal by the Company concerning eventual remediation.

We believe that the most likely form of overall site remediation will be to leave the existing contamination in place (with some limited soil removal), encapsulate it, and monitor the effectiveness of the encapsulation. We anticipate that a substantial portion of the remediation cost will be borne by the United States based on its involvement at the site from 1942 – 1964, as historic documentation indicates that PCBs and mercury were first used at the facility at a time of U.S. government ownership for production of materials needed by the military. Pursuant to a Consent Decree entered on October 24, 2014, the United States paid the Company \$2.3 million in the 4th quarter of 2014 to resolve the Company's claim for response costs for investigation and initial remediation activities at this facility through October 24, 2014. Contribution by the United States to any future costs of investigation or additional remediation has, by agreement, been left unresolved. Though the cost of the likely remediation remains uncertain pending completion of the phased remediation decision process, we have estimated that the Company's share of the cost of the encapsulation and limited soil removal described above would approximate \$0.4 million, which has been accrued as of December 31, 2016.

[Table of Contents](#)

The Company is evaluating options for upgrading the wastewater treatment facilities at its Adams, Massachusetts plant. This work has been undertaken pursuant to an administrative Consent Order originally issued by the Massachusetts Department of Environmental Protection (“DEP”) on June 18, 2002. This order was amended on June 1, 2009 and on June 2, 2010. The amended Order includes the investigation by January 1, 2022 of options for ensuring that the facility's wastewater treatment ponds will not result in unpermitted discharge to groundwater. Additional requirements of the amendment include the submittal by July 1, 2022 of a plan for closure of a historic lime solids disposal area. Preliminary engineering reviews completed in 2005 indicate that the estimated cost of wastewater treatment upgrades to operate this facility beyond 2024 may be between \$6 million and \$8 million. The Company estimates that the remaining remediation costs would approximate \$0.4 million, which has been accrued as of December 31, 2016.

Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures

The information concerning mine safety violations or other regulatory matters required by Section 1503(a) of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and Item 104 of Regulation S-K is included in Exhibit 95 to this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

PART II

Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

The Company's common stock is traded on the New York Stock Exchange under the symbol "MTX". Information on market prices and dividends is set forth below.

	<u>First</u>	<u>Second</u>	<u>Third</u>	<u>Fourth</u>
2016 Quarters				
Market price range per share of common stock				
High	\$ 57.12	\$ 61.66	\$ 72.51	\$ 82.90
Low	37.03	52.53	56.00	66.10
Close	57.12	57.38	70.69	77.25
Dividends paid per common share	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05
2015 Quarters				
Market price range per share of common stock				
High	\$ 74.74	\$ 74.21	\$ 68.15	\$ 61.80
Low	59.00	66.49	46.69	45.35
Close	70.65	69.02	50.31	45.86
Dividends paid per common share	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05

Equity Compensation Plan Information

The following table summarizes information about our equity compensation plans as of December 31, 2016. All outstanding awards relate to our common stock.

Plan Category	Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options	Weighted average exercise price of outstanding options	Number of securities remaining available for future issuance
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders	<u>1,198,725</u>	\$ 41.66	<u>1,202,426</u>
Total	<u>1,198,725</u>	\$ 41.66	<u>1,202,426</u>

Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

On September 16, 2015, the Company's Board of Directors authorized the Company's management to repurchase, at its discretion, up to \$150 million of the Company's shares over a two-year period commencing upon the expiration of the prior two-year program in October 2015. As of December 31, 2016, 54,098 shares have been repurchased under this program for \$2.6 million, or an average price of approximately \$48.91 per share.

On January 18, 2017, the Company's Board of Directors declared a regular quarterly dividend on its common stock of \$0.05 per share. No dividend will be payable unless declared by the Board and unless funds are legally available for payment thereof.

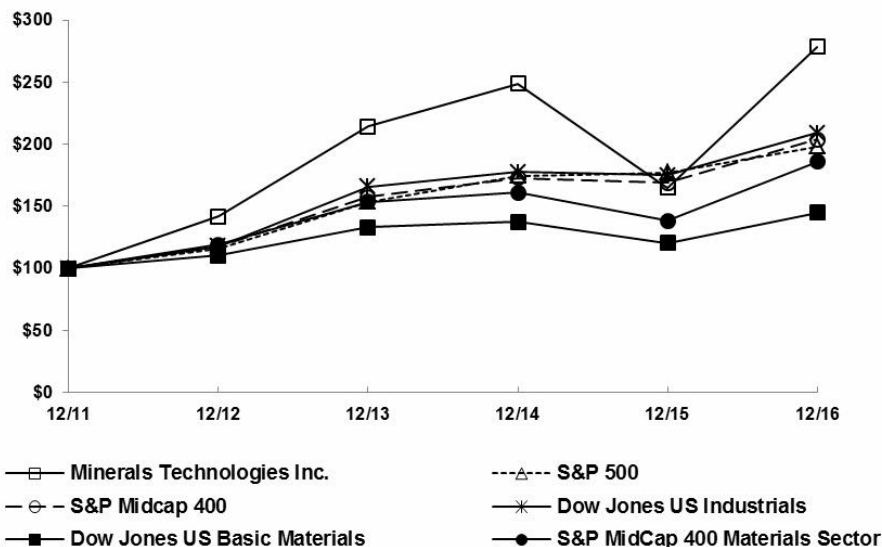
On February 3, 2017, the last reported sales price on the NYSE was \$80.00 per share and there were approximately 175 holders of record of the common stock.

Performance Graph

The graph below compares Minerals Technologies Inc.'s cumulative 5-year total shareholder return on common stock with the cumulative total returns of the S&P 500 index, the Dow Jones US Industrials index, the S&P Midcap 400 index, the Dow Jones US Basic Materials index, and the S&P MidCap 400 Materials Sector. The graph tracks the performance of a \$100 investment in our common stock and in each index (with the reinvestment of all dividends) from 12/31/2011 to 12/31/2016.

COMPARISON OF 5 YEAR CUMULATIVE TOTAL RETURN*

Among Minerals Technologies Inc., the S&P 500 Index, the S&P Midcap 400 Index, the Dow Jones US Industrials Index, the Dow Jones US Basic Materials Index, and S&P MidCap 400 Materials Sector



*\$100 invested on 12/31/11 in stock or index, including reinvestment of dividends. Fiscal year ending December 31.

Copyright© 2017 Standard & Poor's, a division of S&P Global. All rights reserved.
Copyright© 2017 S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, a division of S&P Global. All rights reserved.

	12/11	12/12	12/13	12/14	12/15	12/16
Minerals Technologies Inc.	100.00	141.93	214.50	248.78	164.83	278.56
S&P 500	100.00	116.00	153.58	174.60	177.01	198.18
S&P Midcap 400	100.00	117.88	157.37	172.74	168.98	204.03
Dow Jones US Industrials	100.00	117.87	165.74	177.84	174.83	208.98
Dow Jones US Basic Materials	100.00	110.49	133.00	137.51	120.42	144.83
S&P MidCap 400 Materials Sector	100.00	119.17	153.63	160.87	138.20	185.77

Item 6. Selected Financial Data

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
	(in millions, except per share data)				
Net sales	\$ 1,638.0	\$ 1,797.6	\$ 1,725.0	\$ 1,018.2	\$ 996.8
Cost of sales	1,177.6	1,326.6	1,289.6	784.5	774.5
Production margin	460.4	471.0	435.4	233.7	222.3
Marketing and administrative expenses	179.4	190.1	182.2	89.2	88.5
Research and development expenses	23.8	23.6	24.4	20.1	20.2
Insurance / litigation settlement (gain)	-	-	(2.3)	(2.5)	-
Acquisition related transaction and integration costs	8.0	11.8	19.1	-	-
Restructuring and other items, net	28.3	45.2	43.2	-	-
Income from operations	220.9	200.3	168.8	126.9	113.6
Interest expense, net	(54.4)	(60.9)	(41.8)	(0.2)	(0.1)
Premium on early extinguishment of debt	-	(4.5)	(5.8)	-	-
Other non-operating income (deductions), net	3.8	(2.3)	1.8	(3.0)	(2.9)
Total non-operating deductions, net	(50.6)	(67.7)	(45.8)	(3.2)	(3.0)
Income from continuing operations before provision for taxes and equity in earnings	170.3	132.6	123.0	123.7	110.6
Provision for taxes on income	35.3	22.8	30.8	34.5	31.9
Equity in earnings of affiliates, net of tax	2.1	1.8	1.2	-	-
Income from continuing operations, net of tax	137.1	111.6	93.4	89.2	78.7
Income (loss) from discontinued operations, net of tax	-	-	2.1	(5.8)	(2.5)
Consolidated net income	137.1	111.6	95.5	83.4	76.2
Less:					
Net income attributable to non-controlling interests	3.7	3.7	3.1	3.1	2.1
Net income attributable to Minerals Technologies Inc. (MTI)	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 92.4	\$ 80.3	\$ 74.1

Earnings (Loss) per share attributable to MTI:

Basic:					
Income from continuing operations	\$ 3.82	\$ 3.11	\$ 2.62	\$ 2.48	\$ 2.17
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	-	-	0.06	(0.17)	(0.07)
Basic earnings per share	\$ 3.82	\$ 3.11	\$ 2.68	\$ 2.31	\$ 2.10
Diluted:					
Income from continuing operations	\$ 3.79	\$ 3.08	\$ 2.59	\$ 2.46	\$ 2.16
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	-	-	0.06	(0.16)	(0.07)
Diluted earnings per share	\$ 3.79	\$ 3.08	\$ 2.65	\$ 2.30	\$ 2.09
Cash dividends declared per common share	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.13

Shares used in computation of earnings per share:

Basic	34.9	34.7	34.5	34.7	35.3
Diluted	35.2	35.0	34.8	35.0	35.5

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2013	2012
	(in millions)				
Working capital	\$ 455.6	\$ 485.0	\$ 552.0	\$ 634.2	\$ 514.4
Total assets	2,863.4	2,980.0	3,157.5	1,217.5	1,211.2
Long-term debt, net of unamortized discount and deferred financing costs	1,069.9	1,255.3	1,429.4	75.0	8.5
Total debt	1,082.8	1,264.9	1,435.3	88.7	92.6
Total shareholders' equity	1,030.9	937.7	888.9	874.4	813.7

Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

Cautionary Statement for “Safe Harbor” Purposes under the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995

The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 provides a safe harbor for forward-looking statements made by or on behalf of the Company. This report contains statements that the Company believes may be “forward-looking statements” within the meaning of Section 21E of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, particularly statements relating to the Company’s objectives, plans or goals, future actions, future performance or results of current and anticipated products, sales efforts, expenditures, and financial results. From time to time, the Company also provides forward-looking statements in other publicly-released materials, both written and oral. Forward-looking statements provide current expectations and forecasts of future events such as new products, revenues and financial performance, and are not limited to describing historical or current facts. They can be identified by the use of words such as “believes,” “expects,” “plans,” “intends,” “anticipates,” and other words and phrases of similar meaning.

Forward-looking statements are necessarily based on assumptions, estimates and limited information available at the time they are made. A broad variety of risks and uncertainties, both known and unknown, as well as the inaccuracy of assumptions and estimates, can affect the realization of the expectations or forecasts in these statements. Many of these risks and uncertainties are difficult to predict or are beyond the Company’s control. Consequently, no forward-looking statements can be guaranteed. Actual future results may vary materially. Significant factors affecting the expectations and forecasts are set forth under “Item 1A — Risk Factors” in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

The Company undertakes no obligation to update any forward-looking statements to reflect events or circumstances that arise after the date hereof. Investors should refer to the Company’s subsequent filings under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 for further disclosures.

Executive Summary

The Company reported diluted earnings of \$3.79 per share, an increase of 23% from prior year earnings of \$3.08 per share.

Worldwide sales were \$1.6 billion in 2016 as compared with \$1.8 billion in 2015, a decrease of 9%. The decrease in sales was primarily due to our exit from several service lines in our Energy Services segment resulting from continued weaker market conditions in the oil and gas sector, weaker conditions in the steel sector, and to previously announced North American paper mill closures in our Specialty Minerals segment. In addition, foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on sales of \$34.0 million, or 2 percentage points of decline.

Consolidated income from operations was \$220.9 million as compared with \$200.3 million in the prior year. This increase was due to strong results from our Specialty Minerals and Performance Materials segments, due to company-wide productivity improvements of 7 percent and cost control. In addition, there were lower restructuring costs in 2016 as compared with the prior year. Net income was \$133.4 million as compared to \$107.9 million in the prior year.

In 2016, the Company continued to advance the execution of its growth strategies of geographic expansion and new product innovation and development. Our businesses in China grew 9 percent in 2016 over prior year and our long-term growth targets in the region remain on track. We began operations of a 100,000 ton satellite plant in China in the third quarter of 2016. The Company continued to see progress in its major growth strategy of developing and commercializing new products. We have twenty-six commercial contracts for FulFill® globally. Earlier this year, we also formed an EcoPartnership in China with the Sun Paper Group and Tsinghua University’s School of Environment to pilot innovation with our NewYield™ process technology aimed at reducing soil and ground water pollution by converting a waste stream from the papermaking process into useable filler for paper.

Long term debt as of December 31, 2016 was \$1,069.9 million. During the 2016, we repaid \$193 million of our long-term debt. Since the acquisition of AMCOL in 2014, we have repaid over \$480 million of our Term Loan debt. Cash, cash equivalents and short-term investments were \$191 million as of December 31, 2016. Cash flow from operations for 2016 was \$225.0 million. Our intention continues to be to use excess cash flow primarily to repay debt and to continue to de-lever as quickly as possible.

Outlook

Looking forward, we remain cautious about the state of the global economy and the impact it will have on our product lines.

The Company will continue to focus on innovation and new product development and other opportunities for sales growth from its existing businesses, as follows:

- Develop multiple high-filler technologies under the FulFill® platform of products, to increase the fill rate in freesheet paper and continue to progress with commercial discussions and full-scale paper machine trials.
- Develop products and processes for waste management and recycling opportunities to reduce the environmental impact of the paper mill, reduce energy consumption and improve the sustainability of the papermaking process, including our New Yield™ products.

Table of Contents

- Further penetration into the packaging segment of the paper industry.
- Increase our sales of PCC for paper by further penetration of the markets for paper filling at both freesheet and groundwood mills, particularly in emerging markets.
- Expand the Company's PCC coating product line using the satellite model.
- Increase our presence and gain penetration of our bentonite based foundry customers for the Metalcasting industry in emerging markets, such as China and India.
- Increase our presence and market share in global pet care products, particularly in emerging markets.
- Deploy new products in pet care such as lightweight litter.
- Promote the Company's expertise in crystal engineering, especially in helping papermakers customize PCC morphologies for specific paper applications.
- Expand PCC produced for paper filling applications by working with industry partners to develop new methods to increase the ratio of PCC for fiber substitutions.
- Develop unique calcium carbonate and talc products used in the manufacture of novel biopolymers, a new market opportunity.
- Deploy new talc and GCC products in paint, coating and packaging applications.
- Deploy value-added formulations of refractory materials that not only reduce costs but improve performance.
- Expand our solid core wire product line into BRIC, Middle Eastern and other Asian countries.
- Deploy our laser measurement technologies into new applications.
- Expand our refractory maintenance model to other steel makers globally.
- Increase our presence and market share in Asia and in the global powdered detergent market.
- Continue the development of our proprietary Enersol® products for agricultural applications worldwide.
- Pursue opportunities for our products in environmental and building and construction markets in the Middle East, Asia Pacific and South America regions.
- Increase our presence and market share for geosynthetic clay liners within the Environmental Products product line.
- Increase our presence and market penetration in filtration and well testing within the Energy Services segment.
- Increase global market share in services for the floating production storage and offloading (FPSO) market.
- Deploy operational excellence principles into all aspects of the organization, including system infrastructure and lean principles.
- Continue to explore selective small bolt-on type acquisitions to fit our core competencies in minerals and fine particle technology.

However, there can be no assurance that we will achieve success in implementing any one or more of these opportunities.

Results of Operations

Consolidated Income Statement Review

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	(Dollars in millions)				
Net sales	\$ 1,638.0	\$ 1,797.6	\$ 1,725.0	-8.9%	4.2%
Cost of sales	1,177.6	1,326.6	1,289.6	-11.2%	2.9%
Production margin	460.4	471.0	435.4	-2.3%	8.2%
<i>Production margin %</i>	28.1%	26.2%	25.2%		
Marketing and administrative expenses	179.4	190.1	182.2	-5.6%	4.3%
Research and development expenses	23.8	23.6	24.4	0.8%	-3.3%
Insurance / litigation settlement (gain)	-	-	(2.3)	*	*
Acquisition related transaction and integration costs	8.0	11.8	19.1	-32.2%	-38.2%
Restructuring and other items, net	28.3	45.2	43.2	-37.4%	4.6%
Income from operations	220.9	200.3	168.8	10.3%	18.7%
<i>Operating margin %</i>	13.5%	11.1%	9.8%		
Interest expense, net	(54.4)	(60.9)	(41.8)	-10.7%	45.7%
Premium on early extinguishment of debt	-	(4.5)	(5.8)	-100.0%	-22.4%
Other non-operating income (deductions), net	3.8	(2.3)	1.8	*	*
Total non-operating deductions, net	(50.6)	(67.7)	(45.8)	-25.3%	47.8%
Income from continuing operations before provision for taxes and equity in earnings	170.3	132.6	123.0	28.4%	7.8%
Provision for taxes on income	35.3	22.8	30.8	54.8%	-26.0%
<i>Effective tax rate</i>	20.7%	17.2%	25.0%		
Equity in earnings of affiliates, net of tax	2.1	1.8	1.2	16.7%	50.0%
Income from continuing operations, net of tax	137.1	111.6	93.4	22.8%	19.5%
Income from discontinued operations, net of tax	-	-	2.1	*	*
Net income attributable to non-controlling interests	3.7	3.7	3.1	0.0%	19.4%
Net income attributable to Minerals Technologies Inc. (MTI)	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 92.4	23.6%	16.8%

* Not meaningful

Net Sales

	Year Ended December 31,				
	2016	2015	2014	2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	(Dollars in millions)				
U.S.	\$ 936.2	\$ 1,049.6	\$ 1,004.4	-10.8%	4.5%
International	701.8	748.0	720.6	-6.2%	3.8%
Total sales	\$ 1,638.0	\$ 1,797.6	\$ 1,725.0	-8.9%	4.2%
Specialty Minerals Segment	\$ 591.5	\$ 624.6	\$ 650.1	-5.3%	-3.9%
Refractories Segment	274.5	295.9	359.7	-7.2%	-17.7%
Performance Materials Segment	502.8	514.8	352.8	-2.3%	45.9%
Construction Technologies Segment	183.3	180.1	152.3	1.8%	18.3%
Energy Services Segment	85.9	182.2	210.1	-52.9%	-13.3%
Total sales	\$ 1,638.0	\$ 1,797.6	\$ 1,725.0	-8.9%	4.2%

* Not meaningful

[Table of Contents](#)

Worldwide net sales in 2016 decreased 8.9% from the previous year to \$1,638.0 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on sales of \$34.0 million or 2 percent. Net sales in the United States decreased to \$936.2 million in 2016 and represented 57.2% of consolidated net sales. International sales decreased slightly to \$701.8 million from \$748.0 million and represented 42.8% of consolidated net sales.

Worldwide net sales in 2015 increased 4.2% from the previous year to \$1,797.6 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on sales of \$95.3 million or 6 percentage points of growth. Net sales in the US grew slightly to \$1,049.6 million and represented 58.4% of consolidated net sales. International sales increased 3.8% to \$748.0 million from \$720.6 million.

Operating Costs and Expenses

Consolidated cost of sales was \$1,177.6 million, \$1,326.6 million and \$1,289.6 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Production margin as a percentage of net sales was 28.1% in 2016, 26.2% in 2015 and 25.2% in 2014. Improved productivity, supply chain savings and cost improvements offset the impact of weak market conditions within the Energy Services segment.

Marketing and administrative costs were \$179.4 million, \$190.1 million and \$182.2 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Marketing and administrative costs as a percentage of net sales were 10.9% in 2016, 10.6% in 2015 and 10.6% in 2014.

Research and development expenses were \$23.8 million, \$23.6 million and \$24.4 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Research and development expenses as a percentage of net sales were 1.4% in 2016, 1.3% in 2015 and 1.4% in 2014.

The Company incurred \$8.0 million, \$11.8 million and \$19.1 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively for the acquisition related transaction and integration costs.

The Company recognized a litigation settlement gain of \$2.3 million in 2014.

In 2016, the Company recorded a \$28.3 million charge for impairment of assets and other restructuring costs, including lease termination costs relating to its exit of U.S. on-shore service lines, including the Nitrogen and Pipeline product lines in our Energy Services segment.

In 2014, the Company initiated a restructuring program to realign its business operations, improve efficiencies, profitability, and return on invested capital. As a result of this restructuring, the Company recorded \$45.2 million and \$43.2 million of charges related to asset impairments, severance and other employee costs in 2015 and 2014, respectively. This restructuring impacted all business segments of the Company. See Note 3 to the Consolidated Financial Statements for further details.

Income from Operations

During 2016, the Company recorded income from operations of \$220.9 million as compared with \$200.3 million in the prior year. Income from operations represented 13.5% of sales compared with 11.1% of sales in the prior year. Income from operations in 2016 included acquisition related integration costs of \$8.0 million and restructuring and other charges of \$28.3 million.

During 2015, the Company recorded income from operations of \$200.3 million as compared with \$168.8 million in the prior year. Income from operations represented 11.1% of sales compared with 9.8% of sales in the prior year. Income from operations in 2015 included acquisition related integration costs of \$11.8 million and restructuring and other charges of \$45.2 million.

Non-Operating Income (Deductions)

The Company recorded non-operating deductions of \$50.6 million in 2016 as compared with \$67.7 million in the previous year.

Net interest expense was \$54.4 million in 2016 as compared \$60.9 million in the prior year, as a result of lower debt balances due to principal repayments and lower interest costs relating lower rates resulting from the debt repricing in 2015.

In the second quarter of 2015, the Company repriced the outstanding balance of its senior secured loan facility and recorded \$4.5 million in non-cash debt modification costs and other debt modification fees.

In the fourth quarter of 2015, the Company recorded a \$7.6 million charge relating to the write-down of an investment in a development stage enterprise.

Provision for Taxes on Income

Provision for taxes was \$35.3 million, \$22.8 million and \$30.8 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The effective tax rates were 20.7%, 17.2% and 25.0% during 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The higher effective tax rate in 2016 was primarily due to a lower benefit from depletion as a percentage of earnings and to the mix of earnings. The lower effective tax rate in 2015 was primarily due to tax benefits on one-time charges at a higher rate and higher depletion deductions.

[Table of Contents](#)

The factors having the most significant impact on our effective tax rates in recent periods are the rate differentials related to foreign earnings indefinitely invested, percentage depletion, and the tax benefits on restructuring and impairment charges at a higher rate.

Percentage depletion allowances (tax deductions for depletion that may exceed our tax basis in our mineral reserves) are available to us under the income tax laws of the United States for operations conducted in the United States. The tax benefits from percentage depletion were \$11.3 million in 2016, \$11.2 million in 2015 and \$9.5 million in 2014.

We operate in various countries around the world that have tax laws, tax incentives and tax rates that are significantly different than those of the United States. These differences combine to move our overall effective tax rate higher or lower than the United States statutory rate depending on the mix of income relative to income earned in the United States. The effects of foreign earnings and the related foreign rate differentials resulted in a decrease of income tax expense of \$14.7 million, \$11.0 million and \$11.7 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

Income from Continuing Operations, Net of Tax

Income from continuing operations, net of tax, was \$137.1 million in 2016 and included a \$24.0 million charge, net of tax. Such charge consisted of restructuring and other net items, acquisition transaction and integration costs and lease termination costs, inventory write-offs and impairment of assets relating to the Company's exit from the Nitrogen and Pipeline product lines and the restructuring of other onshore services within the Energy Services segment.

Income from continuing operations, net of tax, was \$111.6 million during 2015 and included a \$43.1 million charge, net of tax. Such charge consisted of restructuring and other charges, acquisition transaction and integration costs, debt prepayment costs, and the write down of an investment in a development stage enterprise.

Income from Discontinued Operations, Net of tax

The Company recognized income from discontinued operations, net of tax, of \$2.1 million during 2014 relating its discontinued operations at its merchant PCC facility at Walsum, Germany.

Segment Review

The following discussions highlight the operating results for each of our five segments.

Specialty Minerals Segment

Specialty Minerals Segment	Year Ended December 31,			2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	2016	2015	2014		
	(millions of dollars)				
Net Sales					
Paper PCC	\$ 387.9	\$ 423.3	\$ 454.5	\$ (35.4)	\$ (31.2)
Specialty PCC	64.3	64.8	66.1	(0.5)	(1.3)
PCC Products	\$ 452.2	\$ 488.1	\$ 520.6	\$ (35.9)	\$ (32.5)
Talc	\$ 55.7	\$ 55.9	\$ 55.5	\$ (0.2)	\$ 0.4
Ground Calcium Carbonate	83.6	80.6	74.0	3.0	6.6
Processed Minerals Products	\$ 139.3	\$ 136.5	\$ 129.5	\$ 2.8	\$ 7.0
Total net sales	\$ 591.5	\$ 624.6	\$ 650.1	\$ (33.1)	\$ (25.5)
Income from operations	\$ 102.7	\$ 100.8	\$ 95.8	\$ 1.9	\$ 5.0
% of net sales	17.4%	16.1%	14.7%		

2016 v 2015

Net sales in the Specialty Minerals segment decreased 5 percent to \$591.5 million from \$624.6 million. Higher sales in our Processed Minerals product line, stemming from increased ground calcium carbonate volumes were offset by declines in Paper PCC. Worldwide net sales of PCC products, which are primarily used in the manufacturing process of the paper industry, decreased \$35.9 million, or 7 percent. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on PCC products sales \$9.7 million, or 2 percentage points. The decrease in Paper PCC sales was primarily due to several previously announced paper mill closures in the U.S and weaker printing and writing paper demand in the U.S. and Europe. This was partially offset by an increase in PCC sales in China of 12 percent over last year due to the ramp-up of two new facilities and the successful startup of a 100,000 ton satellite in the third quarter of 2016.

[Table of Contents](#)

Income from operations increased \$1.9 million to \$102.7 million and represented 17.4% of net sales compared to \$100.8 million and 16.1% of sales in prior year.

2015 v 2014

Net sales in the Specialty Minerals segment decreased 4% to \$624.6 million from \$650.1 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on sales of \$33.5 million, or 5 percent. Excluding the effects of foreign exchange, higher sales in ground calcium carbonate were partially offset by declines in Paper PCC. Worldwide net sales of PCC products decreased \$32.5 million, or 6 percent. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on PCC products sales \$30.9 million, or 7 percent. Talc and ground calcium carbonate sales increased primarily due to increased volumes.

Income from operations increased \$5.0 million and represented 16.1% of net sales compared to \$95.8 million and 14.7% of sales in prior year.

Refractories Segment

Refractories Segment	Year Ended December 31,			2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	2016	2015	2014		
	(millions of dollars)				
Net Sales					
Refractory Products	\$ 219.0	\$ 230.7	\$ 273.9	\$ (11.7)	\$ (43.2)
Metallurgical Products	55.5	65.2	85.8	(9.7)	(20.6)
Total net sales	<u>\$ 274.5</u>	<u>\$ 295.9</u>	<u>\$ 359.7</u>	<u>\$ (21.4)</u>	<u>\$ (63.8)</u>
Income from operations	\$ 37.0	\$ 27.8	\$ 43.2	\$ 9.2	\$ (15.4)
% of net sales	13.5%	9.4%	12.0%		

2016 v 2015

Net sales in the Refractories segment declined \$21.4 million in 2016. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on Refractories segment sales of approximately \$2.3 million, or 1 percent. The remaining sales decrease was primarily due to lower volumes stemming from continued weak global steel demand.

Income from operations increased \$9.2 million to \$37.0 million and represented 13.5% of net sales compared to \$27.8 million or 9.4% of sales in 2015. The increase in income from operations relates primarily to improved productivity combined with supply chain savings and lower overhead costs. Additionally, included in income from operations is a \$2.1 million gain on the sale of previously impaired assets in 2016 and restructuring charges of \$2.0 million in 2015.

2015 v 2014

Net sales in the Refractories segment declined \$63.8 million in 2015. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on Refractories segment sales of approximately \$23.7 million, or 7 percent. The remaining sales decrease was primarily due to lower volumes stemming from continued weak global steel demand.

Income from operations decreased \$15.4 million and represented 9.4% of net sales compared to 12.0% in 2014. Income from operations includes restructuring charges of \$2.0 million and \$0.7 million, in 2015 and 2014, respectively. The declines relate primarily to the aforementioned weakness in global steel demand.

Performance Materials Segment

Performance Materials Segment	Year Ended December 31,			2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	2016	2015	2014		
	(millions of dollars)				
Net Sales					
Metalcasting	\$ 258.0	\$ 266.4	\$ 181.4	\$ (8.4)	\$ 85.0
Household, Personal Care and Specialty Products	171.2	172.7	108.0	(1.5)	64.7
Basic Minerals and Other Products	73.6	75.7	63.4	(2.1)	12.3
Total net sales	<u>\$ 502.8</u>	<u>\$ 514.8</u>	<u>\$ 352.8</u>	<u>\$ (12.0)</u>	<u>\$ 162.0</u>
Income from operations	\$ 97.5	\$ 95.9	\$ 41.0	\$ 1.6	\$ 54.9
% of net sales	19.4%	18.6%	11.6%		

2016 v 2015

Net sales in the Performance Materials segment of \$502.8 million decreased \$12.0 million in 2016. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on Performance Materials segment sales of approximately \$15.4 million, or 3 percent. Excluding the effects of foreign exchange, higher China metalcasting sales and increased sales of bulk chromite in our Basic Minerals and Other Products product line were partially offset by lower fabric care sales in our Household, Personal Care & Specialty Minerals product line.

Income from operations increased \$1.6 million and represented 19.4% of net sales compared to 18.6% in 2015 as a result of significant productivity gains and a favorable product mix.

2015 v 2014

Net sales in the Performance Materials segment in 2015 were \$514.8 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on segment sales of approximately \$13.7 million, or 7%. Income from operations was \$95.9 million and represented 18.6% of net sales compared to 11.6% in 2014. Included in income from operations in 2014 were \$6.7 million in restructuring and other charges and a one-time non-cash inventory step charge of \$3.6 million. The strong margin improvement in this segment was attributable to increased sales in consumer products, the realization of acquisition synergies and improved productivity.

This segment's operating results for the year ended December 31, 2014 includes 237 days of results commencing on May 9, 2014.

Construction Technologies Segment

Construction Technologies Segment	Year Ended December 31,			2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	2016	2015	2014		
	(millions of dollars)				
Net Sales					
Environmental Products	\$ 78.9	\$ 69.7	\$ 70.7	\$ 9.2	\$ (1.0)
Building Materials and Other Products	104.4	110.4	81.6	(6.0)	28.8
Total net sales	<u>\$ 183.3</u>	<u>\$ 180.1</u>	<u>\$ 152.3</u>	<u>\$ 3.2</u>	<u>\$ 27.8</u>
Income (Loss) from operations	\$ 23.6	\$ 22.5	\$ (0.8)	\$ 1.1	\$ 23.3
% of net sales	12.9%	12.5%	-0.5%		

2016 v 2015

Net sales in the Construction Technologies segment increased \$3.2 million in 2016 to \$183.3 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on Construction Technologies segment sales of approximately \$3.6 million, or 2 percent. Increased sales in Environmental Products due to higher volumes was partially offset by lower sales in Building Materials and Other Products resulting from smaller scale water proofing projects completed in the western United States and Europe this year as compared to the prior year.

Income from operations increased \$1.1 million to \$23.6 million and represented 12.9% of net sales compared to 12.5% in 2015.

2015 v 2014

Net sales in the Construction Technologies segment in 2015 were \$180.1 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on segment sales of approximately \$9.9 million, or 9%. Income from operations was \$22.5 million and represented 12.5% of net sales compared to a loss in 2014. Included in income from operations in the prior year were restructuring charges of \$5.8 million, an impairment of assets charge of \$11.7 million and a one-time non-cash inventory step up charge of \$2.0 million. Sales and operating income in this business segment were affected by fewer large projects in 2015 as compared with the prior year.

[Table of Contents](#)

This segment's operating results for the year ended December 31, 2014 includes 237 days of results commencing on May 9, 2014.

Energy Services Segment

Energy Services Segment	Year Ended December 31,			2016 vs. 2015	2015 vs. 2014
	2016	2015	2014		
	(millions of dollars)				
Net Sales	\$ 85.9	\$ 182.2	\$ 210.1	\$ (96.3)	\$ (27.9)
Income (Loss) from operations	\$ (25.9)	\$ (27.9)	\$ 16.3	\$ 2.0	\$ (44.2)
% of net sales	-30.2%	-15.3%	7.8%		

2016 v 2015

Net sales in the Energy Services segment declined \$96.3 million in 2016. The sales decrease was due to weak market conditions in the oil and gas sector and the shutdown of U.S. on-shore service lines, including Nitrogen and Pipeline in the second quarter of 2016 and the shutdown of the Coiled Tubing service line in August 2015.

The segment recorded a loss from operations of \$25.9 million in 2016. Included in the loss from operations was \$30.3 million of impairment and restructuring charges relating to the Company's exit from the Nitrogen and Pipeline product lines and restructuring of other onshore services within the Energy Services segment. Going forward, Energy Services' primary service offerings will be off-shore filtration and well testing to the worldwide oil and gas industry.

2015 v 2014

Net sales in the Energy Services segment in 2015 were \$182.2 million. Foreign exchange had an unfavorable impact on segment sales of approximately \$8.4 million, or 6%. This segment recorded a loss from operations of \$27.9 million in 2015. Included in the loss from operations in the current year were asset impairment charges of \$33.0 million and employee termination costs of \$9.0 million. Included in the income from operations in 2014 were asset impairment charges of \$11.6 million and employee termination costs of \$3.7 million.

In 2015, the Company exited the Coiled Tubing service line due to continued losses in this service line due to continued losses in this service line and indications that there will not be any significant improvements in the market in the near or medium term.

This segment's operating results for the year ended December 31, 2014 includes 237 days of results commencing on May 9, 2014.

Liquidity and Capital Resources

Cash provided from continuing operations in 2016 was \$225.0 million, compared with \$270.0 million in prior year. Cash flows provided from operations in 2016 were principally used for repayment of debt, to fund capital expenditures and pay the Company's dividend to common shareholders. The Company's intention continues to be to use excess cash flow primarily to repay debt and to de-lever as quickly as possible. In 2016, the Company repaid \$193 million in principal amount of its long-term debt.

On May 9, 2014, in connection with the acquisition of AMCOL, the Company entered into a credit agreement providing for the \$1.560 billion senior secured term loan facility (the "Term Facility") and a \$200 million senior secured revolving credit facility (the "Revolving Facility" and, together with the Term Facility, the "Facilities"). The net proceeds of the Term Facility, together with the Company's cash on hand, were used as cash consideration for the acquisition of AMCOL and to refinance certain existing indebtedness of the Company (including the Company's 3.46% Series A Senior Notes due October 7, 2020 and 4.13% Series B Senior Notes due October 7, 2023) and AMCOL and to pay fees and expenses in connection with the foregoing. Loans under the Revolving Facility will be used for working capital and other general corporate purposes of the Company and its subsidiaries.

On June 23, 2015, the Company entered into an amendment (the "First Amendment") to the credit agreement to reprice the \$1.378 billion then outstanding on the Term Facility. As amended, the Term Facility had a \$1.078 billion floating rate tranche and a \$300 million fixed rate tranche. On February 14, 2017, the Company entered into an amendment (the "Second Amendment") to the credit agreement to reprice the \$788 million floating rate tranche then outstanding. Following the Second Amendment, the loans outstanding under the floating rate tranche of the Term Facility will mature on February 14, 2024, the loans outstanding under the fixed rate tranche of the Term Facility will mature on May 9, 2021 and the loans outstanding (if any) and commitments under the Revolving Facility will mature and terminate, as the case may be, on May 9, 2019. After the Second Amendment, loans under the floating rate tranche of the Term Facility bear interest at a rate equal to an adjusted LIBOR rate (subject to a floor of 0.75%) plus an applicable margin equal to 2.25% per annum. Loans under the fixed rate tranche of the Term Facility bear interest at a rate of 4.75%. Loans under the Revolving Facility will bear interest at a rate equal to an adjusted LIBOR rate plus an applicable margin equal to 1.75% per annum. Such rates are subject to decrease by up to 25 basis points in the event that, and for so long as, the Company's net leverage ratio (as defined in the credit agreement) is less than certain thresholds. The floating rate tranche of the Term Facility was issued at par and the fixed rate tranche of the Term Facility was issued at a 0.25% discount in connection with the First Amendment. The variable rate tranche of the Term Facility was issued at a 0.25% discount in connection with the Second Amendment. The variable rate tranche has a 1% required amortization per year. The Company will pay certain fees under the credit agreement, including customary annual administration fees. The loans under the fixed rate tranche of the Term Facility are subject to prepayment premiums in the event of certain prepayments prior to the third anniversary of the effective date of the First Amendment, and the loans under the floating rate tranche of the Term Facility are subject to prepayment premiums in the event of certain prepayments prior to the six-month anniversary of the effective date of the Second Amendment. The obligations of the Company under the Facilities are unconditionally guaranteed jointly and severally by, subject to certain exceptions, all material domestic subsidiaries of the Company (the "Guarantors") and secured, subject to certain exceptions, by a security interest in substantially all of the assets of the Company and the Guarantors.

[Table of Contents](#)

The credit agreement contains certain customary affirmative and negative covenants that limit or restrict the ability of the Company and its restricted subsidiaries to enter into certain transactions or take certain actions. In addition, the credit agreement contains a financial covenant that requires the Company, if on the last day of any fiscal quarter loans or letters of credit were outstanding under the Revolving Facility (excluding up to \$15 million of letters of credit), to maintain a maximum net leverage ratio (as defined in the credit agreement) of, initially, 5.25 to 1.00 for the four fiscal quarter period preceding such day. Such maximum net leverage ratio requirement is subject to decrease during the duration of the facility to a minimum level (when applicable) of 3.50 to 1.00. As of December 31, 2016, there were no loans and \$12.2 million in letters of credit outstanding under the Revolving Facility. The Company is in compliance with all the covenants associated with this Revolving Facility as of the end of the period covered by this report.

The Company has five committed loan facilities for the funding of new manufacturing facilities in China, for a combined 94.8 million RMB and \$1.8 million. In December 2016, the Company entered into a committed loan facility in the amount of 680 million Yen (approximately \$5.8 million). As of December 31, 2016, on a combined basis, \$15.0 million was outstanding. Principal will be repaid in accordance with the payment schedules ending in 2021. The Company repaid \$3.2 million on these loans in 2016.

As of December 31, 2016, the Company had \$34.8 million in uncommitted short-term bank credit lines, of which approximately \$6.1 million was in use. The credit lines are primarily outside the U.S. and are generally one year in term at competitive market rates at large well-established financial institutions. The Company typically uses its available credit lines to fund working capital requirements or local capital spending needs. We anticipate that capital expenditures for 2017 should be between \$70 million and \$75 million, principally related to the construction of PCC plants and other opportunities that meet our strategic growth objectives. We expect to meet our other long-term financing requirements from internally generated funds, committed and uncommitted bank credit lines and, where appropriate, project financing of certain satellite plants.

On April 5, 2016, the Company entered into a floating to fixed interest rate swap for an initial aggregate notional amount of \$300 million to limit exposure to interest rate increases related to a portion of the Company's floating rate indebtedness. The notional amount at December 31, 2016 was \$257 million. This swap hedges a portion of contractual floating rate interest through May 2021. As a result of the swap, the Company's effective fixed interest rate on the notional amount of floating rate indebtedness will be 4.25%.

On September 16, 2015, the Company's Board of Directors authorized the Company's management to repurchase, at its discretion, up to \$150 million of the Company's shares over a two-year period commencing October 3, 2015. During 2016, 54,098 shares have been repurchased under this program for \$2.6 million, or an average price of approximately \$48.91 per share.

On January 18, 2017, the Company's Board of Directors declared a regular quarterly dividend on its common stock of \$0.05 per share. No dividend will be payable unless declared by the Board and unless funds are legally available for payment thereof.

Contractual Obligations

The Company has committed cash outflow related to long-term debt, interest on long-term debt, pension and post-retirement benefit obligations, operating lease agreements, and other long-term contractual obligations. As of December 31, 2016, minimum payments for these obligations were as follows:

	Payments Due by Period				
	Total	2017	2018 - 2019	2020 - 2021	After 2021
	(millions of dollars)				
Debt	\$ 1,103.1	\$ 6.8	\$ 4.2	\$ 1,092.1	\$ -
Interest related to long term debt	194.5	44.4	88.0	62.1	-
Estimated pension and post retirement plan funding	27.2	12.2	15.0	-	-
Operating lease obligations	84.3	14.4	22.0	14.8	33.1
Other long term liabilities	21.5	2.1	-	-	19.4
Total contractual obligations	<u>\$ 1,430.6</u>	<u>\$ 79.9</u>	<u>\$ 129.2</u>	<u>\$ 1,169.0</u>	<u>\$ 52.5</u>

Long-term debt amounts in the preceding table represent the principal amounts of all outstanding long-term debt, including current portion. As of December 31, 2016, maturities for long-term debt extended to 2021. On February 14, 2017, the Company extended the maturity of the floating rate tranche of the Term Facility to February 14, 2024.

Interest related to long-term debt is based on interest rates in effect as of December 31, 2016 and is calculated on debt with maturities that, on December 31, 2016 extended to 2021. As the contractual interest rate for a portion of our debt is variable, actual cash payments may differ from the estimates provided in the preceding table. On February 14, 2017 the Company extended the maturity of the floating rate tranche of the Term Facility to February 14, 2024.

Estimated minimum required pension funding and post-retirement benefits are based on actuarial estimates using current assumptions for discount rates, long-term rate of return on plan assets, rate of compensation increases, and health care cost trend rates. The Company has determined that it is not practicable to present expected pension funding and other postretirement benefit payments beyond 2018 and, accordingly, no amounts have been included in the table beyond such dates.

The Company has several non-cancelable operating leases, primarily for office space and equipment. Operating lease obligations includes future minimum rental commitments under non-cancelable leases.

Other long term liabilities include asset retirement obligations relating to the retirement of certain tangible long-lived assets and land restoration obligations at its PCC satellite facilities and mining operations. See Note 20 to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

The total amount of contingent obligations associated with gross unrecognized tax benefits for uncertain tax positions, including positions impacting only the timing of tax benefits was \$13.7 million at December 31, 2016. Payment of these obligations would result from settlements with taxing authorities. Due to the difficulty in determining the timing of settlements, these obligations are not included in the table above. We do not expect to make a tax payment related to these obligations within the next year that would significantly impact liquidity.

Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

Our discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations are based upon our consolidated financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and judgments that affect the reported amounts of assets, liabilities, revenues and expenses, and related disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities.

On an ongoing basis, we evaluate our estimates and assumptions, including those related to revenue recognition, allowance for doubtful accounts, valuation of inventories, valuation of long-term assets, goodwill and other intangible assets, pension plan assumptions, income taxes, asset retirement obligations, income tax valuation allowances, stock-based compensation, and litigation and environmental liabilities. We base our estimates on historical experience and on other assumptions that we believe to be reasonable under the circumstances, the results of which form the basis for making judgments about the carrying values of assets and liabilities that cannot readily be determined from other sources. There can be no assurance that actual results will not differ from those estimates.

We believe the following critical accounting policies require us to make significant judgments and estimates in the preparation of our consolidated financial statements:

- **Revenue recognition:** Revenue from sale of products is recognized when the title passes to the customer, the customer assumes the risks and rewards of ownership, and collectability is reasonably assured. Generally this occurs when the goods are shipped to the customer. Revenues from sales of equipment are recorded upon completion of installation and receipt of customer acceptance. Revenues from services are recorded when the services are performed.

In most of our PCC contracts, the price per ton is based upon the total number of tons sold to the customer during the year. Under those contracts, the price billed to the customer for shipments during the year is based on periodic estimates of the total annual volume that will be sold to the customer. Revenues are adjusted at the end of each year to reflect the actual volume sold. There were no significant revenue adjustments in the fourth quarter of 2016 and 2015, respectively. We have consignment arrangements with certain customers in our Refractories segment. Revenues for these transactions are recorded when the consigned products are consumed by the customer.

Revenues within our Energy Services segment is service based. Certain contracts within this segment are long-term contracts, the revenue for which is recorded using percentage-of-completion method. Progress is generally based upon costs incurred to date as compared to the total estimated costs to complete the work under the contract or the amount of product installed in relation to the total amount expected to be installed. All known or anticipated losses on contracts are provided when they become evident. Cost adjustments that are in the process of being negotiated with customers for extra work or changes in scope of the work are included in revenue when collection is reasonably assured.

- Allowance for doubtful accounts: We provide credit to customers in the ordinary course of business and perform ongoing credit evaluations. Our customer base is diverse and includes customers located throughout the world. Payment terms in certain of the foreign countries in which we do business are longer than those that are customary in the U.S., and, as a result, may give rise to additional credit risk related to outstanding accounts receivable from these non-U.S. customers. Likewise, a change in the financial position, liquidity or prospects of any of our customers could have an impact on our ability to collect amounts due. While concentrations of credit risk related to trade receivables are somewhat limited by our large customer base, we do extend significant credit to some of our customers.

We make estimates of the amounts of our gross accounts receivable that will not be collectible, and record an allowance for doubtful accounts to reduce the carrying value of accounts receivable to the amount that is expected to be realized. In addition to specific allowances established for bankrupt customers, we also analyze the collection history and financial condition of our other customers considering current industry conditions and determine whether an allowance needs to be established or adjusted. We record the increases in the allowance for doubtful accounts as an expense in the period identified in the marketing and administrative expenses line within our Consolidated Statements of Income. We recorded bad debt expenses of \$6.2 million, \$2.6 million and \$2.4 million in 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

- Property, plant and equipment: Property, plant and equipment are depreciated over their useful lives. Useful lives are based on management's estimates of the period that the assets can generate revenue, which does not necessarily coincide with the remaining term of a customer's contractual obligation to purchase products made using those assets. Our sales of PCC are predominately pursuant to long-term evergreen contracts, initially ten years in length, with paper mills at which we operate satellite PCC plants. The terms of many of these agreements have been extended, often in connection with an expansion of the satellite PCC plant. Failure of a PCC customer to renew an agreement or continue to purchase PCC from our facility could result in an impairment of assets or accelerated depreciation at such facility.

We evaluate the recoverability of our property, plant and equipment whenever events or change in circumstances indicate that the carrying value of the assets may not be recoverable. For testing the recoverability, we primarily use discounted cash flow models or cost approach to estimate the fair value of these assets. Critical assumptions used in conducting these tests included expectations of our business performance and financial results, useful lives of assets, discount rates and comparable market data.

- Valuation of long-lived assets, goodwill and other intangible assets: We assess the possible impairment of long-lived assets and identifiable amortizable intangibles whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value may not be recoverable. Goodwill is evaluated for impairment at least annually. Factors we consider important that could trigger an impairment review include the following:
 - Significant under-performance relative to historical or projected future operating results;
 - Significant changes in the manner of use of the acquired assets or the strategy for the overall business;
 - Significant negative industry or economic trends;
 - Market capitalization below invested capital.

Annually, the Company performs a qualitative assessment for each of its reporting units to determine if the two step process for impairment testing is required. If the Company determines that it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, the Company then evaluates the recoverability of goodwill using a two-step impairment test approach at the reporting unit level. Step one involves a) developing the fair value of total invested capital of each reporting unit in which goodwill is assigned; and b) comparing the fair value of total invested capital for each reporting unit to its carrying amount, to determine if there is goodwill impairment. Should the carrying amount for a reporting unit exceed its fair value, then the step one test is failed, and the magnitude of any goodwill impairment is determined under step two. The amount of impairment loss is determined in Step Two by comparing the implied fair value of reporting unit goodwill with the carrying amount of goodwill.

The Company has six reporting units; PCC, Processed Minerals, Refractories, Performance Materials, Construction Technologies and Energy Services. We identify our reporting units by assessing whether the components of our operating segments constitute businesses for which discrete financial information is available and management regularly reviews the operating results of those components. In the fourth quarter of 2016, the Company performed a qualitative assessment of each of its reporting units and determined it was not more likely than not that the fair value of any of its reporting units was less than their carrying values.

- Accounting for income taxes: As part of the process of preparing our consolidated financial statements, we are required to estimate our income taxes in each of the jurisdictions in which we operate. This process involves estimating current tax expense together with assessing temporary differences resulting from differing treatments of items for tax and accounting purposes. These differences result in deferred tax assets and liabilities, which are included in the consolidated balance sheet. We must then assess the likelihood that our deferred tax assets will be recovered from future taxable income, and to the extent we believe that recovery is not likely, we must establish a valuation allowance. To the extent we establish a valuation allowance or change this allowance in a period, we must include an expense within the tax provision in the Consolidated Statements of Income.

Deferred tax liabilities represents amount of income taxes payable in future periods. Such liabilities arise because of temporary differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities. Deferred income tax assets represent amounts available to reduce income taxes payable on taxable income in future years. Such assets arise because of temporary differences between the financial reporting and tax bases of assets and liabilities, as well as from net operating loss. We evaluate the recoverability of these future tax deductions by assessing the adequacy of future expected taxable income from all sources, including reversal of taxable temporary differences and forecasted operating earnings. These sources of income inherently rely heavily on estimates. We use our historical experience and business forecasts to provide insight. The amount recorded for the net deferred tax liability was \$211.7 million and \$221.4 million at December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

The application of income tax law is inherently complex. Laws and regulations in this area are voluminous and are often ambiguous. As such, we are required to make many subjective assumptions and judgments regarding our income tax exposures. Interpretations of and guidance surrounding income tax laws and regulations change over time. As such, changes in our subjective assumptions and judgments can materially affect amounts recognized in the consolidated balance sheets and statements of operations. See Note 7 to the Consolidated Financial Statements for additional detail on our uncertain tax positions.

- Pension Benefits: We sponsor pension and other retirement plans in various forms covering the majority of employees who meet eligibility requirements, including plans we assumed in the AMCOL acquisition. Several statistical and actuarial models which attempt to estimate future events are used in calculating the expense and liability related to the plans. These models include assumptions about the discount rate, expected return on plan assets and rate of future compensation increases as determined by us, within certain guidelines. Our assumptions reflect our historical experience and management's best judgment regarding future expectations. In addition, our actuarial consultants also use subjective factors such as withdrawal and mortality rates to estimate these assumptions. The actuarial assumptions used by us may differ materially from actual results due to changing market and economic conditions, higher or lower withdrawal rates or longer or shorter life spans of participants, among other things. Differences from these assumptions may result in a significant impact to the amount of pension expense/liability recorded by us follows:

A one percentage point change in our major assumptions would have the following effects:

Effect on Expense

(millions of dollars)	Discount Rate	Salary Scale	Return on Asset
1% increase	\$ (4.1)	\$ 0.9	\$ (2.0)
1% decrease	\$ 6.2	\$ (0.8)	\$ 2.0

Effect on Projected Benefit Obligation

(millions of dollars)	Discount Rate	Salary Scale
1% increase	\$ (42.3)	\$ 5.0
1% decrease	\$ 52.3	\$ (4.4)

The investment strategy for pension plan assets is to maintain a broadly diversified portfolio designed to both preserve and grow plan assets to meet future plan obligations. The Company's average rate of return on assets from inception through December 31, 2016 was over 9%. The Company's assets are strategically allocated among equity, debt and other investments to achieve a diversification level that dampens fluctuations in investment returns. The Company's long-term investment strategy is an investment portfolio mix of approximately 55%-65% in equity securities, 30%-35% in fixed income securities and 0%-15% in other securities. As of December 31, 2016, the Company had approximately 60% of its pension assets in equity securities, 33% in fixed income securities and 7% in other securities.

In 2016, a net loss of \$4.6 million (\$3.2 million after-tax) was recorded in other comprehensive income, primarily due to a change in discount rates. In 2015, a net gain of \$10 million (\$7 million after-tax) was recorded in other comprehensive income, primarily due to a change in discount rates and updated mortality tables. In 2014, a net loss of \$48.5 million (\$31.1 million after-tax) was recorded in other comprehensive income, primarily due to a change in discount rates.

We recognized pension expense of \$14.2 million in 2016 as compared to \$18.9 million in 2015. Accounting guidance on retirement benefits requires companies to discount future benefit obligations back to today's dollars using a discount rate that is based on high-quality fixed-income investments. A decrease in the discount rate increases the pension benefit obligation, while an increase in the discount rate decreases the pension benefit obligation. This increase or decrease in the pension benefit obligation is recognized in Accumulated other comprehensive income and subsequently amortized into earnings as an actuarial gain or loss. The guidance also requires companies to use an expected long-term rate of return on plan assets for computing current year pension expense. Differences between the actual and expected returns are also recognized in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) and subsequently amortized into earnings as actuarial gains and losses. At the end of 2016, total actuarial losses recognized in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) for pension plans were (\$82.0 million), as compared to (\$80.5 million) in 2015. The majority of the actuarial losses were due to decreases in the discount rate in 2012 and lower actual rates of return on assets than expected during the financial crisis of 2008.

Actuarial losses for pensions will be impacted in future periods by actual asset returns, discount rate changes, actual demographic experience and other factors that impact these expenses. These losses, reported in Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), will generally be amortized as a component of net periodic benefit cost on a straight-line basis over the average remaining service period of active employees expected to receive benefits under the benefit plans. At the end of 2016, the average remaining service period of active employees or life expectancy for fully eligible employees was 10 years. We expect our 2017 amortization of net actuarial losses to be approximately the same level as 2016, which was \$10.7 million.

- **Asset Retirement Obligations:** We currently record the obligation for estimated asset retirement costs at fair value in the period incurred. Factors such as expected costs and expected timing of settlement can affect the fair value of the obligations. A revision to the estimated costs or expected timing of settlement could result in an increase or decrease in the total obligation which would change the amount of amortization and accretion expense recognized in earnings over time.

A one-percent increase or decrease in the discount rate would change the total obligation by approximately \$0.1 million. A one-percent increase or decrease in the inflation rate would change the total obligation by approximately \$0.1 million.

- **Stock Based Compensation:** The Company uses the Black-Scholes option pricing model to determine the fair value of stock options on their date of grant. This model is based upon assumptions relating to the volatility of the stock price, the life of the option, risk-free interest rate and dividend yield. Of these, stock price volatility and option life require greater levels of judgment and are therefore critical accounting estimates.

We used a stock price volatility assumption based upon the historical and implied volatility of the Company's stock. We believe this is a good indicator of future, actual and implied volatilities. For stock options granted in the period ended December 31, 2016, the Company used a volatility assumption of 36.75%.

The expected life calculation was based upon the observed and expected time to post-vesting forfeiture and exercise. For stock options granted during the fiscal year ended December 31, 2016, the Company used a 6.5 year life assumption.

The Company believes the above critical estimates are based upon outcomes most likely to occur. If we were to simultaneously increase or decrease the option life by one year and the volatility by 100 basis points, recognized compensation expense would have changed approximately \$0.1 million in either direction for the year ended December 31, 2016.

For a detailed discussion on the application of these and other accounting policies, see "Summary of Significant Accounting Policies" in the Note 1 to the Consolidated Financial Statements. This discussion and analysis should be read in conjunction with the consolidated financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this report.

Inflation

Historically, inflation has not had a material adverse effect on us. Our production processes consume a significant amount of energy, primarily electricity, diesel fuel, natural gas and coal. We use diesel fuel to operate our mining and processing equipment and our freight costs are heavily dependent upon fuel prices and surcharges. Energy costs also affect the cost of raw materials. On a combined basis, these factors represent a large exposure to petrochemical and energy products which may be subject to significant price fluctuations. The contracts pursuant to which we construct and operate our satellite PCC plants generally adjust pricing to reflect the pass-through of increases in costs resulting from inflation, including lime and energy prices. However, there is a time lag before such price adjustments can be implemented. The Company and its customers will typically negotiate reasonable price adjustments in order to recover a portion of these escalating costs, but there can be no assurance that we will be able to recover increasing costs through such negotiations.

Cyclical Nature of Customers' Businesses

The bulk of our sales within Specialty Minerals, Performance Materials, Construction Technologies and Refractories segments are to customers in the paper manufacturing, metalcasting, steel manufacturing and construction industries, which have historically been cyclical. The pricing structure of some of our long-term PCC contracts makes our PCC business less sensitive to declines in the quantity of product purchased. In addition, our customers' demand for our Energy Services segment's products and services are affected by oil and natural gas production activities, which are heavily influenced by the benchmark price of these commodities. Oil and natural gas prices decreased significantly between 2014 through 2016, which we expect will cause exploration companies to reduce their capital expenditures and production and exploration activities. This has the effect of decreasing the demand and increasing competition for the services we provide. We cannot predict the economic outlook in the countries in which we do business, nor in the key industries we serve.

Recently Issued Accounting Standards

Changes to accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) are established by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) in the form of accounting standards updates (ASUs) to the FASB's Accounting Standards Codification. The Company considers the applicability and impact of all ASUs. ASUs not listed below were assessed and determined to be either not applicable or are expected to have minimal impact on our consolidated financial position and results of operations.

Revenue from Contracts with Customers

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers" which will supersede nearly all existing revenue recognition guidance under U.S. GAAP. The underlying principle is that an entity will recognize revenue to depict the transfer of goods or services to customers at an amount that the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services. The guidance provides a five-step analysis of transactions to determine when and how revenue is recognized. Other major provisions include capitalization of certain contract costs, consideration of time value of money in the transaction price, and allowing estimates of variable consideration to be recognized before contingencies are resolved in certain circumstances. The guidance also requires enhanced disclosures regarding the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows arising from an entity's contracts with customers. The guidance is effective for the interim and annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2017. The guidance permits the use of either a retrospective or cumulative effect transition method. The Company has not yet selected a transition method and is currently evaluating the impact of this ASU on the Company's consolidated financial statements and related disclosures. The Company expects to complete this analysis in early 2017.

Inventory – Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory

In July 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-11, "Inventory (Topic 330): Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory." Under this accounting guidance, inventory will be measured at the lower of cost and net realizable value and other options that currently exist for market value will be eliminated. ASU No. 2015-11 defines net realizable value as the estimated selling prices in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation. No other changes were made to the current guidance on inventory measurement. ASU 2015-11 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017 with early adoption permitted. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Leases

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, "Leases", which requires lessees to recognize most leases on-balance sheet, thereby increasing their reported assets and liabilities, in some cases very significantly. Lessor accounting remains substantially similar to current U.S. GAAP. ASU 2016-02 is effective for public business entities for annual and interim periods in fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. ASU 2016-02 mandates a modified retrospective transition method for all entities. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of this ASU on the Company's consolidated financial statements and related disclosures; however, the Company does not expect the adoption of this guidance to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Investments – Equity Method and Joint Ventures

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-07, “Simplifying the Transition to the Equity Method of Accounting”, which eliminates the requirement for an investor to retroactively apply the equity method when its increase in ownership interest (or degree of influence) in an investee triggers equity method accounting. ASU 2016-07 is effective for all entities for interim and annual periods in fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company’s financial statements.

Stock Compensation – Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, “Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting”, which is intended to improve the accounting for share-based payment transactions as part of the FASB’s simplification initiative. The ASU changes seven aspects of the accounting for share-based payment award transactions, including: (1) accounting for income taxes; (2) classification of excess tax benefits on the statement of cash flows; (3) forfeitures; (4) minimum statutory tax withholding requirements; (5) classification of employee taxes paid on the statement of cash flows when an employer withholds shares for tax-withholding purposes; (6) practical expedient – expected term (nonpublic only); and (7) intrinsic value (nonpublic only). The ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those years for public business entities. Early adoption is permitted in any interim or annual period provided that the entire ASU is adopted. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company’s financial statements.

Income Taxes: Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets Other Than Inventory

In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-16, "Income Taxes (Topic 740): Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets Other Than Inventory", which requires entities to recognize at the transaction date the income tax consequences of intercompany asset transfer other than inventory. ASU 2016-16 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017. Early adoption is permitted for this ASU, but only at the beginning of an annual period for which no financial statements have already been issued or made available for issuance. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk

We are exposed to market risk from fluctuations in foreign currency exchange rates, interest rates and credit risk. We use a variety of practices to manage these market risks, including derivative financial instruments when appropriate. Our treasury and risk management policies prohibit us from using derivative instruments for trading or speculative purposes. We also do not use leveraged derivative instruments or derivatives with complex features.

Exchange Rate Sensitivity

As we operate in over 30 countries with many international subsidiaries, we are exposed to currency fluctuations related to manufacturing and selling our products and services. This foreign currency risk is diversified and involves assets, liabilities and cash flows denominated in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar (USD).

We manage our foreign currency exchange risk in part through operational means, including managing same currency revenues versus same currency costs as well as same currency assets versus same currency liabilities. We also have subsidiaries with the same currency exposures which may offset each other, providing a natural hedge against one another’s currency risk. When appropriate, we enter into derivative financial instruments, such as forward exchange contracts, to mitigate the impact of foreign exchange rate movements on our operating results. The counterparties are major financial institutions. Such forward exchange contracts would not subject us to additional risk from exchange rate because gains and losses on these contracts would offset losses and gains on the assets, liabilities, and transactions being hedged. At December 31, 2016, we did not have any significant foreign currency derivative contracts outstanding.

Assets and liabilities of our international subsidiaries are translated to their parent company’s reporting currency at current exchange rates during consolidation; gains and losses stemming from these translations are included as a component of Other Comprehensive Income and reported within Accumulated Comprehensive Income within our Consolidated Balance Sheets. Income and expenses of our international subsidiaries are translated at average exchange rates for the period and, when included within retained earnings in the balance sheet at current exchange rates, the differences to those average exchange rates are included within Other Comprehensive Income and reported within Accumulated Comprehensive Income. When our subsidiaries transact business in currencies other than their functional currency, those transactions are revalued in their functional currency and differences resulting from such revaluations are included within other non-operating income (deduction), net within our Consolidated Statement of Income.

We do not anticipate that near-term changes in exchange rates will have a material impact on our future earnings or cash flows. However, there can be no assurance that a sudden and significant change in the value of foreign currencies would not have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations.

Interest Rate Sensitivity

A portion of our long-term bank debt bears interest at variable rates (see Note 14 to the Consolidated Financial Statements) and our results of operations would be affected by interest rate changes to such bank debt outstanding. The Company utilizes interest rate swaps to limit exposure to market fluctuations on floating-rate debt. During the second quarter of 2016, the Company entered into a floating to fixed interest rate swap for an initial aggregate notional amount of \$300 million. An immediate 10% increase in the interest rates would not have a material effect on our results of operations over the next fiscal year. A one percentage point change in interest rates would cost \$5.6 million in incremental interest charges on an annual basis.

Credit Risk

We are exposed to credit risk on certain assets, primarily accounts receivable. We provide credit to customers in the ordinary course of business and perform ongoing credit evaluations. Concentrations of credit risk with respect to trade receivables are limited due to the large number of customers comprising our customer base. We currently believe our allowance for doubtful accounts is sufficient to cover customer credit risks. Our accounts receivable financial instruments are carried at amounts that approximate fair value.

Euro & Sovereign Debt Risk

Certain countries that have adopted the Euro as their currency have experienced recent financial difficulty and are in the process of stabilizing their finances through various measures, which may include such drastic measures as defaulting on their debt or adopting a different currency as their national currency. While we do not believe we have significant financial risk resulting from any of these situations, we cannot predict the disruption that would occur to the European markets in which we compete if such drastic measures were taken.

We do not have any material credit risk with sovereign governments currently facing this situation as we do not sell our products to them. We do, however, sell to customers in these countries, but we believe our risk associated with these customers is not material.

Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

The financial information required by Item 8 is contained in Item 15 of Part IV of this report.

Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

None.

Item 9A. Controls and Procedures

Disclosure Controls and Procedures

As of the end of the period covered by this report, and under the supervision and with participation of the Company's management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, the Company carried out an evaluation of the effectiveness of the design and operation of the Company's disclosure controls and procedures, pursuant to Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(b). Based upon that evaluation, the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of December 31, 2016.

The Company continues to implement a global enterprise resource planning ("ERP") system for the businesses acquired from AMCOL. As of December 31, 2016, primarily all of the domestic and European locations of the acquired businesses were implemented on the new system. The worldwide implementation is expected to be substantially completed over the next six to nine months and involves changes in the systems that include internal controls. Although the transition has proceeded to date without material adverse effects, the possibility exists that our migration to the new ERP system could adversely affect the Company's internal controls over financial reporting and procedures. We are reviewing each system as it is being implemented and the controls affected by the implementation of the new systems, and are making appropriate changes to the affected internal controls as we implement the new systems. We believe that the controls as modified are appropriate and functioning effectively.

Pursuant to Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, we have included a report of management's assessment of the design and operating effectiveness of our internal controls as part of this report. Management's report is included in our consolidated financial statements beginning on page F-1 of this report under the caption entitled "Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting."

Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Except as described above, there were no changes in the Company's internal control over financial reporting during the most recent fiscal quarter that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

Item 9B. Other Information

None

PART III

Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance

Set forth below are the names and ages of all Executive Officers of the Registrant indicating all positions and offices with the Registrant held by each such person, and each such person's principal occupations or employment during the past five years.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Age</u>	<u>Position</u>
Douglas T. Dietrich	47	Chief Executive Officer
Matthew E. Garth	42	Senior Vice President, Finance and Treasury, Chief Financial Officer
D.J. Monagle, III	54	Senior Vice President, Chief Operating Officer – Specialty Minerals Inc. and Minteq Group
Gary L. Castagna	55	Senior Vice President and Managing Director, Performance Materials
Jonathan J. Hastings	54	Senior Vice President, Corporate Development
Douglas W. Mayger	59	Senior Vice President and Director-MTI Supply Chain
Thomas J. Meek	59	Senior Vice President, General Counsel, Human Resources, Secretary and Chief Compliance Officer
W. Rand Mendez	57	Senior Vice President and Managing Director, Paper PCC
Brett Argirakis	52	Vice President and Managing Director, Minteq International Inc.
Michael A. Cipolla	59	Vice President, Corporate Controller and Chief Accounting Officer
Andrew Jones	58	Vice President and Managing Director, Energy Services

Douglas T. Dietrich was elected Chief Executive Officer effective December 13, 2016, having served previously as Senior Vice President, Finance and Treasury, Chief Financial Officer beginning on January 1, 2011. Prior to that, he was appointed Vice President, Corporate Development and Treasury effective August 2007. He had been Vice President, Alcoa Wheel Products since 2006 and President, Latin America Extrusions and Global Rod and Bar Products since 2002.

Matthew E. Garth was elected Senior Vice President, Finance and Treasury, Chief Financial Officer effective January 16, 2017. Mr. Garth joins the Company from Arconic Inc. (formerly Alcoa Inc.), where most recently he had been Vice President, Financial Planning & Analysis and Investor Relations since 2015. Prior to his most recent position, he was Vice President, Finance & CFO Operations – Alcoa Global Packaging from 2014 to 2015; Vice President, Finance – Alcoa Global Packaging from 2011 to 2014; Vice President, Finance – Alcoa North American Rolled Products from 2010 to 2011; Director, Investor Relations Alcoa, Inc. from 2009 to 2010; Director, Corporate Treasury Alcoa, Inc. from 2007 to 2009.

D.J. Monagle III was elected Chief Operating Officer – Specialty Minerals Inc. and Minteq Group effective February 27, 2014. Prior to that, he was Senior Vice President and Managing Director, Paper PCC, effective October 2008. In November 2007, he was appointed Vice President and Managing Director - Performance Minerals. He joined the Company in January of 2003 and held positions of increasing responsibility including Vice President, Americas, Paper PCC and Global Marketing Director, Paper PCC. Before joining the Company, Mr. Monagle worked for the Paper Technology Group at Hercules between 1990 and 2003, where he held sales and marketing positions of increasing responsibility. Between 1985 and 1990, he served as an aviation officer in the U.S. Army's 11th Armored Cavalry Regiment, leaving the service as a troop commander with a rank of Captain.

Gary L. Castagna was elected Senior Vice President and Managing Director, Performance Materials in June 2014. Prior to that, he was Executive Vice President of AMCOL International Corporation (AMCOL) and President of Performance Materials segment since May 2008. Prior to that, he had been the Senior Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer of AMCOL since February 2001 and a consultant to AMCOL since June 2000. Prior to that, he was the Vice President of AMCOL and President of Chemdal International Corporation (former subsidiary of AMCOL) since August 1997.

Jonathan J. Hastings was elected Senior Vice President, Corporate Development effective September 2012. Before that, he was Vice President, Corporate Development. Prior to that, he was Senior Director of Strategy and New Business Development - Coatings, Global at The Dow Chemical Company. Prior to that, he held positions of increasing responsibility at Rohm and Haas, including Vice President & General Manager - Packaging and Building Materials - Europe.

[Table of Contents](#)

Douglas W. Mayger was elected Senior Vice President and Director-MTI Supply Chain in November 2015. Prior to that, he was Senior Vice President, Performance Minerals and Supply Chain. Prior to that, he was Vice President and Managing Director, Performance Minerals, which encompasses the Processed Minerals product line and the Specialty PCC product line. Prior to that, he was General Manager - Carbonates West, Performance Minerals and Business Manager - Western Region. Before joining the Company as plant manager in Lucerne Valley in 2002, he served as Vice President of Operations for Aggregate Industries.

Thomas J. Meek was elected Senior Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary, Chief Compliance Officer in October 2012. In December 2011, he was given the additional responsibility for Human Resources. Prior to that, he was Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary of the Company effective September 1, 2009. Prior to that, he served as Deputy General Counsel at Alcoa. Before joining Alcoa in 1999, Mr. Meek worked with Koch Industries, Inc. of Wichita, Kansas, where he held numerous supervisory positions. His last position there was Interim General Counsel. From 1985 to 1990, Mr. Meek was an Associate/Partner in the Wichita, Kansas law firm of McDonald, Tinker, Skaer, Quinn & Herrington, P.A.

W. Rand Mendez was elected Senior Vice President and Managing Director, Paper PCC in July 2015. Prior to that, Mr. Mendez was with E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Co., where he held a variety of operational and product leadership positions across a number of businesses. Mr. Mendez joined DuPont in 1982 and assumed positions of increasing responsibility. In 1996, he was appointed Global Business Manager, DuPont Specialty Chemicals. He was subsequently named Sales and Marketing Director, DuPont Surfaces; Business Director, DuPont Safety Resources; and in 2008, Corporate Marketing Director, DuPont Corporate Marketing & Sales.

Brett Argirakis was elected Vice President and Managing Director, Minteq International in January 2016. Prior to that, he was Global Vice President & General Manager, Refractories. Prior to that, he was Director, Marketing, Minteq Europe. Prior to that, he served as Director of Sales and Field Operations for Minteq U.S. Mr. Argirakis joined the Company in 1987 and has held positions of increasing responsibility.

Michael A. Cipolla was elected Vice President, Corporate Controller and Chief Accounting Officer in July 2003. Prior to that, he served as Corporate Controller and Chief Accounting Officer of the Company since 1998. From 1992 to 1998 he served as Assistant Corporate Controller.

Andrew Jones was elected Vice President and Managing Director, Energy Services in September 2015. Prior to that, he was Vice President and Managing Director, Eastern Hemisphere, Energy Services since 2014. Prior to joining the company, he was Managing Director of Africa Oilfield Services since 2009.

The information concerning the Company's Board of Directors required by this item is incorporated herein by reference to the Company's Proxy Statement, under the captions "Committees of the Board of Directors" and "Item 1 - Election of Directors."

The information regarding compliance with Section 16(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 required by this Item is incorporated herein by reference to the Company's Proxy Statement, under the caption "Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance."

The Board has established a code of ethics for the Chief Executive Officer, the Chief Financial Officer, and the Chief Accounting Officer entitled "Code of Ethics for the Senior Financial Officers," which is available on our website, www.mineralstech.com, under the links entitled *Our Company*, *Corporate Responsibility* and *Policies and Charters*.

Item 11. Executive Compensation

The information appearing in the Company's Proxy Statement under the captions "Compensation Discussion and Analysis," "Report of the Compensation Committee" and "Compensation of Executive Officers and Directors" is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters

The information appearing in the Company's Proxy Statement under the caption "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management" is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence

The information appearing in the Company's Proxy Statement under the caption "Certain Relationships and Related Transactions" is incorporated herein by reference.

The Board has established Corporate Governance principles which include guidelines for determining Director independence, which is available on our website, www.mineralstech.com, under the links entitled *Our Company*, *Corporate Responsibility* and *Policies and Charters*. The information appearing in the Company's Proxy Statement under the caption "Corporate Governance – Director Independence" is incorporated herein by reference.

Item 14. Principal Accountant Fees and Services

The information appearing in the Company's Proxy Statement under the caption "Principal Accountant Fees and Services" is incorporated herein by reference.

PART IV

Item 15. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules

(a) The following documents are filed as part of this report:

1. Financial Statements. The following Consolidated Financial Statements of Mineral Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies and Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm are set forth on pages F-2 to F-38.

Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2016 and 2015
 Consolidated Statements of Income for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014
 Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014
 Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014
 Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014
 Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements
 Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm
 Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

2. Financial Statement Schedule. The following financial statement schedule is filed as part of this report:

		<u>Page</u>
Schedule II -	Valuation and Qualifying Accounts	S-1

All other schedules for which provision is made in the applicable accounting regulations of the SEC are not required under the related instructions or are inapplicable and, therefore, have been omitted.

3. Exhibits. The following exhibits are filed as part of, or incorporated by reference into, this report.

2.1	-	Agreement and Plan of Merger, dated as of March 10, 2014, by and among Minerals Technologies Inc., MA Acquisition Inc. and AMCOL International Corporation (1)	
3.1	-	Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company (2)	
3.2	-	By-Laws of the Company as amended and restated effective March 16, 2016 (3)	
4.1	-	Specimen Certificate of Common Stock (2)	
10.1	-	Asset Purchase Agreement, dated as of September 28, 1992, by and between Specialty Refractories Inc. and Quigley Company Inc. (4)	
10.1(a)	-	Agreement dated October 22, 1992 between Specialty Refractories Inc. and Quigley Company Inc., amending Exhibit 10.1 (5)	
10.1(b)	-	Letter Agreement dated October 29, 1992 between Specialty Refractories Inc. and Quigley Company Inc., amending Exhibit 10.1 (5)	
10.2	-	Reorganization Agreement, dated as of September 28, 1992, by and between the Company and Pfizer Inc. (4)	
10.3	-	Asset Contribution Agreement, dated as of September 28, 1992, by and between Pfizer Inc. and Specialty Minerals Inc. (4)	
10.4	-	Asset Contribution Agreement, dated as of September 28, 1992, by and between Pfizer Inc. and Barretts Minerals Inc. (4)	
10.4(a)	-	Agreement dated October 22, 1992 between Pfizer Inc, Barretts Minerals Inc. and Specialty Minerals Inc., amending Exhibits 10.3 and 10.4 (5)	
10.5	-	Employment Agreement, dated December 13, 2016, between the Company and Douglas T. Dietrich (6) (+)	
10.6	-	Form of Employment Agreement between the Company and each of Brett Argirakis, Michael A. Cipolla, Matthew E. Garth, Andrew Jones, Douglas W. Mayger, Thomas J. Meek, W. Rand Mendez and D.J. Monagle, III (*) (+)	
10.6(a)	-	Form of Employment Agreement between the Company and Jonathan J. Hastings (7) (+)	
10.6(b)	-	Form of amendment to Employment Agreement between the Company and Jonathan J. Hastings (8) (+)	
10.6(c)	-	Form of Employment Agreement between the Company and Gary L. Castagna (9) (+)	
10.7	-	Severance Agreement between the Company and Douglas T. Dietrich (10) (+)	
10.8	-	Form of Severance Agreement between the Company and each of Brette Argirakis, Michael A. Cipolla, Matthew E. Garth, Andrew Jones, Douglas W. Mayger, Thomas J. Meek, W. Rand Mendez, and D.J. Monagle, III (*) (+)	
10.8(a)	-	Form of Severance Agreement between the Company and Jonathan J. Hastings (11) (+)	

[Table of Contents](#)

10.8(b)	-	Form of amendment to Severance Agreement between the Company and Jonathan J. Hastings (12) (+)
10.8(c)	-	Form of Severance Agreement between the Company and Gary L. Castagna (13) (+)
10.9	-	Form of Indemnification Agreement between the Company and each of Michael A. Cipolla, Douglas T. Dietrich, Jonathan J. Hastings, Andrew Jones, Douglas W. Mayger, Thomas J. Meek, D.J. Monagle III and each of the Company's non-employee directors (14) (+)
10.10	-	Company Employee Protection Plan, as amended August 27, 1999 (15) (+)
10.11	-	Company Nonfunded Deferred Compensation and Unit Award Plan for Non-Employee Directors, as amended and restated effective January 1, 2008 (16) (+)
10.11(a)	-	First Amendment to the Company Nonfunded Deferred Compensation and Unit Award Plan for Non-Employee Directors, dated January 18, 2012 (17) (+)
10.12	-	2015 Stock Award and Incentive Plan of the Company (18) (+)
10.13	-	Company Retirement Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 21, 2012 (19) (+)
10.13(a)	-	Second Amendment to Company Retirement Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 22, 2014 (20) (+)
10.13(b)	-	Third Amendment to Company Retirement Plan, as amended and restated, dated June 12, 2015 (21) (+)
10.13(c)	-	Fourth Amendment to Company Retirement Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 16, 2016 (*) (+)
10.14	-	Company Supplemental Retirement Plan, amended and restated effective December 31, 2009 (22) (+)
10.14(a)	-	First Amendment to Company Supplemental Retirement Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 22, 2014 (23) (+)
10.15	-	Company Savings and Investment Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 21, 2012 (24) (+)
10.15(a)	-	Amendment to the Company Savings and Investment Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 5, 2013 (25) (+)
10.15(b)	-	Amendment to the Company Savings and Investment Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 5, 2013 (26) (+)
10.15(c)	-	Third Amendment to the Company Savings and Investment Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 22, 2014 (27) (+)
10.15(d)	-	Amendment to the Company Savings and Investment Plan, as amended and restated, dated December 31, 2015 (28) (+)
10.16	-	Company Supplemental Savings Plan, amended and restated effective December 31, 2009 (29) (+)
10.16(a)	-	Amendment to the Company Supplemental Savings Plan, dated December 28, 2011 (30) (+)
10.16(b)	-	First Amendment to the Company Supplemental Savings Plan, dated December 22, 2014 (31) (+)
10.16(c)	-	Second Amendment to the Company Supplemental Savings Plan, dated December 22, 2014 (32) (+)
10.16(d)	-	Third Amendment to the Company Supplemental Savings Plan, dated December 16, 2016 (*) (+)
10.17	-	Company Health and Welfare Plan, effective as of April 1, 2003 and amended and restated as of January 1, 2006 (33) (+)
10.17(a)	-	Amendment to the Company Health and Welfare Plan, dated May 19, 2009 (34) (+)
10.17(b)	-	First Amendment to Company Health and Welfare Plan, dated December 22, 2014 (35) (+)
10.18	-	Company Retiree Medical Plan, effective as of January 1, 2011 (36) (+)
10.18(a)	-	First Amendment to Company Retiree Medical Plan, dated December 22, 2014 (37) (+)
10.19	-	Amended and Restated Grantor Trust Agreement, dated as of April 1, 2010, by and between the Company and the Wilmington Trust Company (38) (+)
10.20	-	AMCOL International Corporation Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plan, as amended (39) (+)
10.20(a)	-	First Amendment to AMCOL International Corporation Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plan, as amended, dated December 22, 2014 (40) (+)
10.20(b)	-	Third Amendment to the AMCOL International Corporation Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Plan, as amended, dated August 21, 2015 (41) (+)
10.21	-	AMCOL International Corporation Amended and Restated Supplementary Pension Plan for Employees (42) (+)
10.21(a)	-	First Amendment to AMCOL International Corporation Amended and Restated Supplementary Pension Plan for Employees, dated December 22, 2014 (43) (+)
10.21 (b)	-	Second Amendment to Amended and Restated Supplementary Pension Plan for Employees of AMCOL International Corporation, dated August 21, 2015 (44) (+)

[Table of Contents](#)

- 10.22 - Second Amendment, dated as of February 14, 2017, to the Credit Agreement, dated as of May 9, 2014, among Minerals Technologies Inc., the subsidiary borrowers party thereto, the lenders party thereto, JPMorgan Chase Bank, N.A., as administrative agent and collateral agent, and the other agents party thereto (45)
 - 10.23 - Indenture, dated July 22, 1963, between the Cork Harbour Commissioners and Roofchrome Limited (4)
 - [21.1](#) - Subsidiaries of the Company (*)
 - [23.1](#) - Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm (*)
 - [24](#) - Power of Attorney (*)
 - [31.1](#) - Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) Certification executed by the Company's principal executive officer (*)
 - [31.2](#) - Rule 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) Certification executed by the Company's principal financial officer (*)
 - [32](#) - Section 1350 Certification (*)
 - [95](#) Information Concerning Mine Safety Violations (*)
- (1) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 2.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed March 10, 2014.
 - (2) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit so designated filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2003.
 - (3) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit so designated filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on March 17, 2016.
 - (4) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit so designated filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (Registration No. 33-51292), originally filed on August 25, 1992.
 - (5) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit so designated filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (Registration No. 33-59510), originally filed on March 15, 1993.
 - (6) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.1 filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on December 16, 2016.
 - (7) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.5 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2006.
 - (8) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.6(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.
 - (9) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.6(b) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
 - (10) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit 10.2 filed with the Company's Current Report on form 8-K filed on December 16, 2016.
 - (11) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.6 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2005.
 - (12) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.7(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.
 - (13) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.7(b) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
 - (14) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.1 filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 8, 2009.
 - (15) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.7 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2004.
 - (16) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.8 filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended March 30, 2008.
 - (17) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.11(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011.
 - (18) Incorporated by reference to Appendix B to the Company's 2015 Proxy Statement filed on April 2, 2015.
 - (19) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.12 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012.
 - (20) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.13(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
 - (21) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.2 filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended June 28, 2015.
 - (22) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.13 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.
 - (23) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.14(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
 - (24) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.14 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2012.

Table of Contents

- (25) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.15(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013.
- (26) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.15(b) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2013.
- (27) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.15(c) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (28) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.15(d) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2015.
- (29) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.15 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.
- (30) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.16(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2011.
- (31) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.16(b) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (32) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.16(c) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (33) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.14 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2006.
- (34) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.16(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2009.
- (35) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.17(b) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (36) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.17 filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2010.
- (37) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.18(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (38) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.1 filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the period ended April 4, 2010.
- (39) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.1 filed with the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2008 of AMCOL International Corporation (Commission File No. 0-15661)
- (40) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.20(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (41) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.1 filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 27, 2015.
- (42) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit 10.6 filed with the Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2008 of AMCOL International Corporation (Commission File No. 0-15661)
- (43) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.21(a) filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2014.
- (44) Incorporated by reference to exhibit 10.2 filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q for the quarter ended September 27, 2015.
- (45) Incorporated by reference to the exhibit 10.1 filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 15, 2017.
- (*) Filed herewith.
- (+) Management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement required to be filed pursuant to Item 601 of Regulation S-K.

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

By: /s/ Douglas T. Dietrich

Douglas T. Dietrich
Chief Executive Officer

February 17, 2017

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the Registrant in the capacities and on the dates indicated:

<u>SIGNATURE</u>	<u>TITLE</u>	<u>DATE</u>
<u>/s/ Douglas T. Dietrich</u> Douglas T. Dietrich	Chief Executive Officer (principal executive officer)	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Matthew E. Garth</u> Matthew E. Garth	Senior Vice President-Finance and Treasury, Chief Financial Officer (principal financial officer)	February 17, 2017
<u>/s/ Michael A. Cipolla</u> Michael A. Cipolla	Vice President - Controller and Chief Accounting Officer (principal accounting officer)	February 17, 2017

Table of Contents

<hr/> *	Director	February 17, 2017
Joseph C. Breunig		
<hr/> *	Director	February 17, 2017
John J. Carmola		
<hr/> *	Director	February 17, 2017
Robert L. Clark		
/s/ Douglas T. Dietrich	Director	February 17, 2017
Douglas T. Dietrich		
<hr/> *	Chairman & Director	February 17, 2017
Duane R. Dunham		
<hr/> *	Director	February 17, 2017
Marc E. Robinson		
<hr/> *	Director	February 17, 2017
Barbara R. Smith		
<hr/> *	Director	February 17, 2017
Donald C. Winter		

* By: /s/ Thomas J. Meek
Thomas J. Meek
Attorney-in-Fact

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES

INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Audited Financial Statements:	<u>Page</u>
Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2016 and 2015	F-2
Consolidated Statements of Income for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014	F-3
Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014	F-4
Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014	F-5
Consolidated Statements of Shareholders' Equity for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014	F-6
Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements	F-7
Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm	F-40
Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting	F-42
Valuation and Qualifying Accounts	S-1

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
(millions of dollars, except share and per share amounts)		
ASSETS		
Current assets:		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 188.5	\$ 229.4
Short-term investments, at cost which approximates market	2.0	2.6
Accounts receivable, less allowance for doubtful accounts - 2016 - \$7.9; 2015 -\$ 4.4	341.3	348.7
Inventories	186.9	194.9
Prepaid expenses	28.0	24.9
Other current assets	4.4	3.1
Total current assets	751.1	803.6
Property, plant and equipment, less accumulated depreciation and depletion	1,051.8	1,104.3
Goodwill	778.7	781.2
Intangible assets	204.4	212.7
Deferred income taxes	27.1	30.6
Other assets and deferred charges	50.3	47.6
Total assets	\$ 2,863.4	\$ 2,980.0
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY		
Current liabilities:		
Short-term debt	\$ 6.1	\$ 6.5
Current maturities of long-term debt	6.8	3.1
Accounts payable	144.9	152.4
Income tax payable	21.5	16.7
Accrued compensation and related items	61.3	64.5
Other current liabilities	54.9	75.4
Total current liabilities	295.5	318.6
Long-term debt, net of unamortized discount and deferred financing costs	1,069.9	1,255.3
Deferred income taxes	238.8	252.0
Accrued pension and postretirement benefits	147.3	141.8
Other non-current liabilities	81.0	74.6
Total liabilities	1,832.5	2,042.3
Shareholders' equity:		
Preferred stock, without par value; 1,000,000 shares authorized; none issued	-	-
Common stock, par value at \$0.10 per share; 100,000,000 shares authorized; Issued 48,229,826 shares in 2016 and 47,990,136 shares in 2015	4.8	4.8
Additional paid-in capital	400.0	387.6
Retained earnings	1,419.1	1,292.7
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(221.1)	(180.9)
Less common stock held in treasury, at cost; 13,259,839 shares in 2016 and 13,205,741 shares 2015	(596.3)	(593.7)
Total MTI shareholders' equity	1,006.5	910.5
Non-controlling interest	24.4	27.2
Total shareholders' equity	1,030.9	937.7
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$ 2,863.4	\$ 2,980.0

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements, which are an integral part of these statements.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars, except per share amounts)		
Product sales	\$ 1,552.1	\$ 1,615.4	\$ 1,514.9
Service revenue	85.9	182.2	210.1
Total net sales	1,638.0	1,797.6	1,725.0
Cost of goods sold	1,117.7	1,190.0	1,141.5
Cost of service revenue	59.9	136.6	148.1
Total cost of sales	1,177.6	1,326.6	1,289.6
Production margin	460.4	471.0	435.4
Marketing and administrative expenses	179.4	190.1	182.2
Research and development expenses	23.8	23.6	24.4
Insurance / litigation settlement (gain)	-	-	(2.3)
Acquisition related transaction and integration costs	8.0	11.8	19.1
Restructuring and other items, net	28.3	45.2	43.2
Income from operations	220.9	200.3	168.8
Interest expense, net	(54.4)	(60.9)	(41.8)
Premium on early extinguishment of debt	-	(4.5)	(5.8)
Other non-operating income (deductions), net	3.8	(2.3)	1.8
Total non-operating deductions, net	(50.6)	(67.7)	(45.8)
Income from continuing operations before provision for taxes and equity in earnings	170.3	132.6	123.0
Provision for taxes on income	35.3	22.8	30.8
Equity in earnings of affiliates, net of tax	2.1	1.8	1.2
Income from continuing operations, net of tax	137.1	111.6	93.4
Income from discontinued operations, net of tax	-	-	2.1
Consolidated net income	137.1	111.6	95.5
Less:			
Net income attributable to non-controlling interests	3.7	3.7	3.1
Net income attributable to Minerals Technologies Inc. (MTI)	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 92.4
Earnings per share:			
Basic:			
Income from continuing operations attributable to MTI	\$ 3.82	\$ 3.11	\$ 2.62
Income from discontinued operations attributable to MTI	-	-	0.06
Basic earnings per share attributable to MTI	\$ 3.82	\$ 3.11	\$ 2.68
Diluted:			
Income from continuing operations attributable to MTI	\$ 3.79	\$ 3.08	\$ 2.59
Income from discontinued operations attributable to MTI	-	-	0.06
Diluted earnings per share attributable to MTI	\$ 3.79	\$ 3.08	\$ 2.65
Cash dividends declared per common share	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.20	\$ 0.20
Shares used in computation of earnings per share:			
Basic	34.9	34.7	34.5
Diluted	35.2	35.0	34.8

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements, which are an integral part of these statements.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
Consolidated net income	\$ 137.1	\$ 111.6	\$ 95.5
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax:			
Foreign currency translation adjustments	(40.2)	(76.6)	(51.5)
Pension and postretirement plan adjustments	(3.2)	7.3	(31.1)
Unrealized gains on cash flow hedges	1.6	-	-
Total other comprehensive loss, net of tax	(41.8)	(69.3)	(82.6)
Total comprehensive income including non-controlling interests	95.3	42.3	12.9
Less: Net income attributable to non-controlling interest	3.7	3.7	3.1
Less: Foreign currency translation adjustments attributable to non-controlling interest	(1.6)	(1.3)	(1.0)
Comprehensive income attributable to non-controlling interest	2.1	2.4	2.1
Comprehensive income attributable to MTI	<u>\$ 93.2</u>	<u>\$ 39.9</u>	<u>\$ 10.8</u>

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements, which are an integral part of these statements.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
Operating Activities:			
Consolidated net income	\$ 137.1	\$ 111.6	\$ 95.5
Gain from discontinued operations	-	-	2.1
Income from continuing operations	137.1	111.6	93.4
Adjustments to reconcile net income to net cash provided by operating activities:			
Depreciation, depletion and amortization	91.9	98.3	84.4
Loss on disposal of property, plant and equipment	1.9	0.1	0.5
Pension amortization and settlement loss	7.9	9.9	5.1
Deferred income taxes	(10.9)	(2.5)	(21.1)
Provision for bad debts	6.2	2.6	2.4
Stock-based compensation	6.3	11.2	5.9
Asset impairment charge	18.5	34.2	23.7
Other non-cash items	(3.1)	(0.2)	7.5
Changes in operating assets and liabilities			
Accounts receivable	(4.9)	36.6	5.2
Inventories	3.1	3.1	19.5
Pension plan funding	(10.5)	(10.4)	(7.6)
Accounts payable	(4.8)	(9.7)	16.0
Restructuring liabilities	(4.3)	(3.0)	14.6
Income taxes payable	5.4	(15.4)	51.0
Tax benefits related to stock incentive programs	0.3	0.4	3.7
Prepaid expenses and other	(15.0)	3.2	9.9
Net cash provided by continuing operations	225.1	270.0	314.1
Net cash used in discontinued operations	-	-	(3.3)
Net cash provided by operating activities	225.1	270.0	310.8
Investing Activities:			
Acquisition of business, net of cash acquired	-	-	(1,802.3)
Purchases of property, plant and equipment	(62.4)	(86.0)	(81.8)
Proceeds from sale of assets	1.4	5.0	9.4
Purchases of short-term investments	(6.7)	(4.7)	(6.3)
Proceeds from sale of short-term investments	8.0	1.1	18.7
Other	(1.9)	-	(0.7)
Net cash used in investing activities	(61.6)	(84.6)	(1,863.0)
Financing Activities:			
Proceeds from issuance of long-term debt	7.2	11.8	1,546.1
Debt issuance and settlement costs	-	-	(38.2)
Repayment of long-term debt	(193.2)	(191.8)	(175.0)
Net issuance (repayment) of short-term debt	(0.1)	1.3	0.1
Purchase of common shares for treasury	(2.6)	-	-
Proceeds from issuance of stock under option plan	5.5	2.5	3.4
Excess tax benefits related to stock incentive programs	0.3	0.5	0.7
Purchase of non-controlling interest share	-	-	(2.1)
Dividends paid to non-controlling interest	(4.9)	(1.1)	(3.3)
Cash dividends paid	(7.0)	(7.0)	(6.9)
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities	(194.8)	(183.8)	1,324.8
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash and cash equivalents	(9.6)	(21.8)	(13.3)
Net decrease in cash and cash equivalents	(40.9)	(20.2)	(240.7)
Cash and cash equivalents at beginning of period	229.4	249.6	490.3
Cash and cash equivalents at end of period	\$ 188.5	\$ 229.4	\$ 249.6

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements, which are an integral part of these statements.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY

	Equity Attributable to MTI						Total
	Common Stock	Additional Paid-in Capital	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	Treasury Stock	Non- controlling Interests	
	(millions of dollars)						
<i>Balance as of December 31, 2013</i>	\$ 4.7	\$ 361.5	\$ 1,106.3	\$ (31.3)	\$ (593.7)	\$ 26.9	\$ 874.4
Net income	-	-	92.4	-	-	3.1	95.5
Other comprehensive income (loss)	-	-	-	(81.6)	-	(1.0)	(82.6)
Dividends declared	-	-	(6.9)	-	-	-	(6.9)
Dividends to non-controlling interest	-	-	-	-	-	(3.3)	(3.3)
Purchase of non-controlling interest shares	-	(2.1)	-	-	-	-	(2.1)
Acquisition of AMCOL	-	-	-	-	-	0.2	0.2
Issuance of shares pursuant to employee stock compensation plans	0.1	3.3	-	-	-	-	3.4
Income tax benefit arising from employee stock compensation plans	-	4.4	-	-	-	-	4.4
Stock based compensation	-	5.9	-	-	-	-	5.9
<i>Balance as of December 31, 2014</i>	<u>\$ 4.8</u>	<u>\$ 373.0</u>	<u>\$ 1,191.8</u>	<u>\$ (112.9)</u>	<u>\$ (593.7)</u>	<u>\$ 25.9</u>	<u>\$ 888.9</u>
Net income	-	-	107.9	-	-	3.7	111.6
Other comprehensive income (loss)	-	-	-	(68.0)	-	(1.3)	(69.3)
Dividends declared	-	-	(7.0)	-	-	-	(7.0)
Dividends to non-controlling interest	-	-	-	-	-	(1.1)	(1.1)
Issuance of shares pursuant to employee stock compensation plans	-	2.4	-	-	-	-	2.4
Income tax benefit arising from employee stock compensation plans	-	1.0	-	-	-	-	1.0
Stock based compensation	-	11.2	-	-	-	-	11.2
<i>Balance as of December 31, 2015</i>	<u>\$ 4.8</u>	<u>\$ 387.6</u>	<u>\$ 1,292.7</u>	<u>\$ (180.9)</u>	<u>\$ (593.7)</u>	<u>\$ 27.2</u>	<u>\$ 937.7</u>
Net income	-	-	133.4	-	-	3.7	137.1
Other comprehensive income (loss)	-	-	-	(40.2)	-	(1.6)	(41.8)
Dividends declared	-	-	(7.0)	-	-	-	(7.0)
Dividends to non-controlling interest	-	-	-	-	-	(4.9)	(4.9)
Issuance of shares pursuant to employee stock compensation plans	-	5.5	-	-	-	-	5.5
Income tax benefit arising from employee stock compensation plans	-	0.6	-	-	-	-	0.6
Purchase of common stock for treasury	-	-	-	-	(2.6)	-	(2.6)
Stock based compensation	-	6.3	-	-	-	-	6.3
<i>Balance as of December 31, 2016</i>	<u>\$ 4.8</u>	<u>\$ 400.0</u>	<u>\$ 1,419.1</u>	<u>\$ (221.1)</u>	<u>\$ (596.3)</u>	<u>\$ 24.4</u>	<u>\$ 1,030.9</u>

See Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements, which are an integral part of these statements.

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Note 1. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

Business

The Company is a resource- and technology-based company that develops, produces and markets on a worldwide basis a broad range of specialty mineral, mineral-based and synthetic mineral products and supporting systems and services.

Basis of Presentation

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Minerals Technologies Inc. (the "Company"), its wholly and majority-owned subsidiaries, as well as variable interest entities for which the Company is the primary beneficiary. All intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation.

On May 9, 2014, the Company acquired AMCOL International Corporation ("AMCOL"), see Note 2. The accompanying Consolidated Statements of Income include the results of operations of the acquired AMCOL businesses from May 9, 2014, through December 31, 2014.

Use of Estimates

The Company employs accounting policies that are in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and require management to make estimates and assumptions relating to the reporting of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the reported period. Significant estimates include those related to revenue recognition, valuation of accounts receivables, valuation of inventories, valuation of long-lived assets, goodwill and other intangible assets, pension plan assumptions, valuation of product liability and asset retirement obligation, income tax, income tax valuation allowances, and litigation and environmental liabilities. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

Cash Equivalents and Short-term Investments

The Company considers all highly liquid investments with original maturities of three months or less to be cash equivalents. Short-term investments consist of financial instruments, mainly bank deposits, with original maturities beyond three months, but less than twelve months. Short-term investments amounted to \$2.0 million and \$2.6 million at December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively. There were no unrealized holding gains and losses on the short-term bank investments held at December 31, 2016.

Trade Accounts Receivable

Trade accounts receivables are recorded at the invoiced amount and do not bear interest. The allowance for doubtful accounts is the Company's best estimate of the amount of probable credit losses in the Company's existing accounts receivable. The Company determines the allowance based on historical write-off experience and specific allowances for bankrupt customers. The Company also analyzes the collection history and financial condition of its other customers, considering current industry conditions and determines whether an allowance needs to be established. The Company reviews its allowance for doubtful accounts monthly. Past due balances over 90 days based on payment terms are reviewed individually for collectability. Account balances are charged off against the allowance after all means of collection have been exhausted and the potential for recovery is considered remote. The Company does not have any off-balance-sheet credit exposure related to its customers.

Inventories

Inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market. Cost is determined by the first-in, first-out (FIFO) method.

Additionally, items such as idle facility expense, excessive spoilage, freight handling costs, and re-handling costs are recognized as current period charges. The allocation of fixed production overheads to the costs of conversion are based upon the normal capacity of the production facility. Fixed overhead costs associated with idle capacity are expensed as incurred.

Property, Plant and Equipment

Property, plant and equipment are recorded at cost. Significant improvements are capitalized, while maintenance and repair expenditures are charged to operations as incurred. The Company capitalizes interest cost as a component of construction in progress. The straight-line method of depreciation is used for substantially for all of the assets for financial reporting purposes, except for mining related equipment which uses units-of-production method. The annual rates of depreciation are 3% - 6.67% for buildings, 6.67% - 12.5% for machinery and equipment, 8% - 12.5% for furniture and fixtures and 12.5% - 25% for computer equipment and software-related assets. The estimated useful lives of our PCC production facilities and machinery and equipment pertaining to our natural stone mining and processing plants and our chemical plants are 15 years.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Property, plant and equipment are depreciated over their useful lives. Useful lives are based on management's estimates of the period that the assets can generate revenue, which does not necessarily coincide with the remaining term of a customer's contractual obligation to purchase products made using those assets. The Company's sales of PCC are predominantly pursuant to long-term evergreen contracts, initially ten years in length, with paper mills at which the Company operates satellite PCC plants. The terms of many of these agreements have been extended, often in connection with an expansion of the satellite PCC plant. Failure of a PCC customer to renew an agreement or continue to purchase PCC from a Company facility could result in an impairment of assets charge or accelerated depreciation at such facility.

Depletion of mineral reserves is determined on a unit-of-extraction basis for financial reporting purposes, based upon proven and probable reserves, and on a percentage depletion basis for tax purposes.

Stripping Costs Incurred During Production

Stripping costs are those costs incurred for the removal of waste materials for the purpose of accessing ore body that will be produced commercially. Stripping costs incurred during the production phase of a mine are variable costs that are included in the costs of inventory produced during the period that the stripping costs are incurred.

Accounting for the Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

Long-lived assets are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable. If events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of an asset may not be recoverable, the Company estimates the undiscounted future cash flows (excluding interest), resulting from the use of the asset and its ultimate disposition. If the sum of the undiscounted cash flows (excluding interest) is less than the carrying value, the Company recognizes an impairment loss, measured as the amount by which the carrying value exceeds the fair value of the asset, determined principally using discounted cash flows.

Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

Goodwill represents the excess of purchase price and related costs over the value assigned to the net tangible and identifiable intangible assets of businesses acquired. Goodwill is not amortized, but instead assessed for impairment. Intangible assets with estimable useful lives are amortized on a straight-line basis over their respective estimated lives to the estimated residual values, and reviewed for impairment.

The Company performs a qualitative assessment for each of its reporting units to determine if the two step process for impairment testing is required. If the Company determines that it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount, the Company would then evaluate the recoverability of goodwill using a two-step impairment test approach at the reporting unit level. In the first step, the fair value for the reporting unit is compared to its book value including goodwill. In the case that the fair value of the reporting unit is less than book value, a second step is performed which compares the fair value of the reporting unit's goodwill to the book value of the goodwill. The fair value for the goodwill is determined based on the difference between the fair values of the reporting unit and the net fair values of the identifiable assets and liabilities of such reporting unit. If the fair value of the goodwill is less than the book value, the difference is recognized as impairment.

Investment in joint ventures

The Company uses the equity method of accounting to incorporate the results of its investments in companies in which it has significant influence, but does not control; and cost method of accounting in companies in which it cannot exercise significant control. The Company records the equity in earnings of its investments in joint ventures on a one month lag. At December 31, 2016, the book value of Company's equity method investment was \$14.4 million. The Company had no cost method investments at December 31, 2016.

Accounting for Asset Retirement Obligations

The Company provides for obligations associated with the retirement of long-lived assets and the associated asset retirement costs. The fair value of a liability for an asset retirement obligation is recognized in the period in which it is incurred if a reasonable estimate of fair value can be made. The associated asset retirement costs are capitalized as part of the carrying amount of the long-lived asset. The Company also provides for legal obligations to perform asset retirement activities where timing or methods of settlement are conditional on future events.

The Company also records liabilities related to land reclamation as a part of the asset retirement obligations. The Company mines land for various minerals using a surface-mining process that requires the removal of overburden. In many instances, the Company is obligated to restore the land upon completion of the mining activity. As the overburden is removed, the Company recognizes this liability for land reclamation based on the estimated fair value of the obligation. The obligation is adjusted to reflect the passage of time and changes in estimated future cash outflows.

Fair Value of Financial Instruments

The recorded amounts of cash and cash equivalents, receivables, short-term borrowings, accounts payable, accrued interest, and variable-rate long-term debt approximate fair value because of the short maturity of those instruments or the variable nature of underlying interest rates. Short-term investments are recorded at cost, which approximates fair market value.

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Derivative Financial Instruments

The Company records derivative financial instruments which are used to hedge certain foreign exchange risk at fair value on the balance sheet. See Note 11 for a full description of the Company's hedging activities and related accounting policies.

Revenue Recognition

Revenue from sale of products is recognized when title passes to the customer, the customer assumes the risks and rewards of ownership, and collectability is reasonably assured; generally, this occurs when the goods are shipped to the customer. In most of the Company's PCC contracts, the price per ton is based upon the total number of tons sold to the customer during the year. Under those contracts the price billed to the customer for shipments during the year is based on periodic estimates of the total annual volume that will be sold to such customer. Revenues are adjusted at the end of each year to reflect the actual volume sold. The Company also has consignment arrangements with certain customers in our Refractories segment. Revenues for these transactions are recorded when the consigned products are consumed by the customer.

Revenue from sales of equipment is recorded upon completion of installation and receipt of customer acceptance. Revenue from services is recorded when the services have been performed and collectability is reasonably assured.

Revenue from long-term construction contracts is recorded using the percentage-of-completion method. Progress is generally based upon costs incurred to date as compared to the total estimated costs to complete the work under the contract or the amount of product installed in relation to the total amount expected to be installed. All known or anticipated losses on contracts are provided when they become evident. Cost adjustments that are in the process of being negotiated with customers for extra work or changes in scope of work are included in revenue when collection is reasonably assured.

Foreign Currency

The assets and liabilities of the Company's international subsidiaries are translated into U.S. dollars using exchange rates at the respective balance sheet date. The resulting translation adjustments are recorded in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) in shareholders' equity. Income statement items are generally translated at monthly average exchange rates prevailing during the period. International subsidiaries operating in highly inflationary economies translate non-monetary assets at historical rates, while net monetary assets are translated at current rates, with the resulting translation adjustments included in net income. At December 31, 2016, the Company had no international subsidiaries operating in highly inflationary economies.

Income Taxes

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates in effect for the year in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that includes the enactment date.

The Company operates in multiple taxing jurisdictions, both within the U.S. and outside the U.S. In certain situations, a taxing authority may challenge positions that the Company has adopted in its income tax filings. The Company regularly assesses its tax position for such transactions and includes reserves for those differences in position. The reserves are utilized or reversed once the statute of limitations has expired or the matter is otherwise resolved.

The application of income tax law is inherently complex. Laws and regulations in this area are voluminous and are often ambiguous. As such, we are required to make many subjective assumptions and judgments regarding our income tax exposures. Interpretations of and guidance surrounding income tax laws and regulations change over time. As such, changes in our subjective assumptions and judgments can materially affect amounts recognized in the consolidated balance sheets and statements of operations. The Company's accounting policy is to recognize interest and penalties as part of its provision for income taxes. See Note 7 for additional detail on our uncertain tax positions.

The accompanying financial statements do not include a provision for U.S. income taxes on international subsidiaries' unremitted earnings, which are expected to be permanently reinvested overseas.

Research and Development

Research and development costs are expensed as incurred.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Accounting for Stock-Based Compensation

The Company recognizes compensation expense for share-based awards based upon the grant date fair value over the vesting period.

Pension and Post-retirement Benefits

The Company has defined benefit pension plans covering the majority of its employees. The benefits are generally based on years of service and an employee's modified career earnings.

The Company also provides post-retirement healthcare benefits for the majority of its retirees and employees in the United States. The Company measures the costs of its obligation based on its best estimate. The net periodic costs are recognized as employees render the services necessary to earn the post-retirement benefits.

The Company assumed AMCOL's qualified defined benefit pension plan which covers substantially all of AMCOL domestic employees hired before January 1, 2004, and supplementary pension plan which provides benefits in excess of qualified plan limitation for certain employees.

Environmental

Expenditures that relate to current operations are expensed or capitalized as appropriate. Expenditures that relate to an existing condition caused by past operations and which do not contribute to current or future revenue generation are expensed. Liabilities are recorded when it is probable the Company will be obligated to pay amounts for environmental site evaluation, remediation or related costs, and such amounts can be reasonably estimated.

Earnings Per Share

Basic earnings per share have been computed based upon the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period.

Diluted earnings per share have been computed based upon the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period assuming the issuance of common shares for all potentially dilutive common shares outstanding.

Subsequent events

The Company has evaluated for subsequent events through the date of issuance of its financial statements.

Recently Issued accounting Standards

Changes to accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (U.S. GAAP) are established by the Financial Accounting Standards Board (FASB) in the form of accounting standards updates (ASUs) to the FASB's Accounting Standards Codification. The Company considers the applicability and impact of all ASUs. ASUs not listed below were assessed and determined to be either not applicable or are expected to have minimal impact on our consolidated financial position and results of operations.

Revenue from Contracts with Customers

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, "Revenue from Contracts with Customers" which will supersede nearly all existing revenue recognition guidance under U.S. GAAP. The underlying principle is that an entity will recognize revenue to depict the transfer of goods or services to customers at an amount that the entity expects to be entitled to in exchange for those goods or services. The guidance provides a five-step analysis of transactions to determine when and how revenue is recognized. Other major provisions include capitalization of certain contract costs, consideration of time value of money in the transaction price, and allowing estimates of variable consideration to be recognized before contingencies are resolved in certain circumstances. The guidance also requires enhanced disclosures regarding the nature, amount, timing and uncertainty of revenue and cash flows arising from an entity's contracts with customers. The guidance is effective for the interim and annual periods beginning on or after December 15, 2017. The guidance permits the use of either a retrospective or cumulative effect transition method. The Company has not yet selected a transition method and is currently evaluating the impact of this ASU on the Company's consolidated financial statements and related disclosures. The Company expects to complete this analysis in early 2017.

Inventory – Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory

In July 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-11, "Inventory (Topic 330): Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory." Under this accounting guidance, inventory will be measured at the lower of cost and net realizable value and other options that currently exist for market value will be eliminated. ASU No. 2015-11 defines net realizable value as the estimated selling prices in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation. No other changes were made to the current guidance on inventory measurement. ASU 2015-11 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017 with early adoption permitted. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Leases

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, "Leases", which requires lessees to recognize most leases on-balance sheet, thereby increasing their reported assets and liabilities, in some cases very significantly. Lessor accounting remains substantially similar to current U.S. GAAP. ASU 2016-02 is effective for public business entities for annual and interim periods in fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018. ASU 2016-02 mandates a modified retrospective transition method for all entities. The Company is currently evaluating the impact of this ASU on the Company's consolidated financial statements and related disclosures; however, the Company does not expect the adoption of this guidance to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Investments – Equity Method and Joint Ventures

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-07, "Simplifying the Transition to the Equity Method of Accounting", which eliminates the requirement for an investor to retroactively apply the equity method when its increase in ownership interest (or degree of influence) in an investee triggers equity method accounting. ASU 2016-07 is effective for all entities for interim and annual periods in fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Stock Compensation – Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, "Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting", which is intended to improve the accounting for share-based payment transactions as part of the FASB's simplification initiative. The ASU changes seven aspects of the accounting for share-based payment award transactions, including: (1) accounting for income taxes; (2) classification of excess tax benefits on the statement of cash flows; (3) forfeitures; (4) minimum statutory tax withholding requirements; (5) classification of employee taxes paid on the statement of cash flows when an employer withholds shares for tax-withholding purposes; (6) practical expedient – expected term (nonpublic only); and (7) intrinsic value (nonpublic only). The ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those years for public business entities. Early adoption is permitted in any interim or annual period provided that the entire ASU is adopted. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Income Taxes: Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets Other Than Inventory

In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-16, "Income Taxes (Topic 740): Intra-Entity Transfers of Assets Other Than Inventory", which requires entities to recognize at the transaction date the income tax consequences of intercompany asset transfer other than inventory. ASU 2016-16 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017. Early adoption is permitted for this ASU, but only at the beginning of an annual period for which no financial statements have already been issued or made available for issuance. The adoption of this guidance is not expected to have a material impact on the Company's financial statements.

Note 2. Business Combination

On May 9, 2014, pursuant to the Merger Agreement dated March 10, 2014, the Company acquired AMCOL, based in Hoffman Estates, Illinois, a leading international producer of specialty materials and related products and services for industrial and consumer markets.

The Company acquired AMCOL by completing a tender offer to purchase AMCOL's outstanding shares of common stock and the subsequent merger of AMCOL with and into a wholly-owned subsidiary of MTI. At the expiration of the Company's tender offer, each tendered share of AMCOL common stock was purchased for consideration equal to \$45.75 in cash, and at the effective time of the back-end merger, each share of AMCOL common stock not tendered (other than shares owned by the Company or held by AMCOL in treasury) was converted into the right to receive consideration equal to \$45.75 in cash. Upon completion of the merger, AMCOL became a wholly owned direct subsidiary of MTI. Through the tender offer and the merger, the Company paid \$1,519.4 million in cash to acquire all of the outstanding shares of AMCOL.

In connection with the acquisition of AMCOL, the Company entered into a \$1,560.0 million senior secured term loan facility (the "Term Facility"), the net proceeds of which, together with the Company's cash on hand, were used as cash consideration for the acquisition of AMCOL and to refinance certain existing indebtedness of the Company and AMCOL and to pay fees and expenses in connection with the foregoing. See Note 14.

The fair value of the total consideration transferred, net of cash acquired, was \$1,802.3 million and comprised of the following:

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	(millions of dollars)
Cash consideration transferred to AMCOL shareholders	\$ 1,519.4
AMCOL notes repaid at close	325.6
Total consideration transferred to debt and equity holders	1,845.0
Cash acquired	42.7
Total consideration transferred to debt and equity holders, net of cash acquired	\$ 1,802.3

The acquisition of AMCOL has been accounted for using the acquisition method of accounting, which requires, among other things, the assets acquired and liabilities assumed be recognized at their respective fair values as of the acquisition date. As of May 9, 2015, the Company has completed its assessment of property, certain reserves (including environmental, legal, and tax matters), obligations and deferred taxes, as well as our review of AMCOL's existing accounting policies. The purchase price allocation has been finalized.

The following table summarizes the final amounts recognized for assets acquired and liabilities assumed as of the acquisition date, as well as adjustments made in 2015 to the amounts initially recorded in 2014 (measurement period adjustments). The measurement period adjustments did not have a significant impact on our consolidated statements of income, balance sheets or cash flows in any period and therefore, we have not retrospectively adjusted our financial statements.

	Preliminary Allocation Previously Reported on Form 10-K as of December 2014	Increase	Final Allocation
	(millions of dollars)	(millions of dollars)	(millions of dollars)
Accounts receivable	\$ 235.7	\$ -	\$ 235.7
Inventories	157.3	-	157.3
Other current assets	65.0	-	65.0
Mineral rights	535.5	-	535.5
Plant, property and equipment	371.2	-	371.2
Goodwill	708.1	12.8	720.9
Intangible assets	214.3	8.8	223.1
Other non-current assets	51.4	9.2	60.6
Total assets acquired	\$ 2,338.5	\$ 30.8	\$ 2,369.3
Accounts payable	66.4	-	66.4
Accrued expenses	61.6	-	61.6
Non-current deferred tax liability	322.3	1.5	323.8
Other non-current liabilities	85.9	29.3	115.2
Total liabilities assumed	\$ 536.2	\$ 30.8	\$ 567.0
Net assets acquired	\$ 1,802.3	\$ -	\$ 1,802.3

The Company used the income, market, or cost approach (or a combination thereof) for the preliminary valuation, and used valuation inputs and analyses that were based on market participant assumptions. Market participants are considered to be buyers and sellers unrelated to the Company in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability. For certain items, the carrying value was determined to be a reasonable approximation of fair value based on the information available. The Company's estimates related to this valuation are considered to be critical accounting estimates because they are susceptible to change from period to period based on our judgments about a variety of factors and due to the uncontrollable variability of market factors underlying them. For example, in performing assessments of the fair value of these assets, the Company makes judgments about the future performance business of the acquired business, economic, regulatory, and political conditions affecting the net assets acquired, appropriate risk-related rates for discounting estimated future cash flows, reasonable estimates of disposal values, and market royalty rate.

Goodwill was calculated as the excess of the consideration transferred over the assets acquired and represents the estimated future economic benefits arising from other assets acquired that could not be individually identified and separately recognized. The goodwill is primarily attributable to fair value of expected synergies from combining the MTI and AMCOL businesses and will be allocated to the Performance Materials and Construction Technologies segments. Goodwill recognized as a result of this acquisition is not deductible for tax purposes.

In connection with the acquisition, the Company recorded an additional deferred tax liability of \$323.8 million with a corresponding increase to goodwill. The increase in deferred tax liability represents the tax effect of the difference between the estimated assigned fair value of the tangible and intangible assets and the tax basis of such assets.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Mineral rights were valued using discounted cash flow method, a Level 3 fair value input. Plant, property and equipment were valued using the replacement cost method adjusted for age and deterioration, also a Level 3 fair value input.

Intangible assets acquired mainly included technology and tradenames. Technology was valued using relief-from royalty method, a Level 3 fair value input, with a weighted average amortization period of 12 years. Tradenames were valued using multi-period excess earnings, also a Level 3 fair value input, with a weighted average amortization period of 34 years.

The Company incurred \$8.0, \$11.8 million and \$19.1 million of acquisition and integration related cost during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively, which is reflected within the acquisition related transaction and integration costs line of the Consolidated Statements of Income.

Note 3. Restructuring and Other Items, net

In 2014, the Company initiated a restructuring program and undertook actions to realign its business operations, improve efficiencies, profitability, and return on invested capital. This restructuring impacted all business segments of the Company and provided annualized savings of approximately \$29 million (unaudited). This restructuring resulted in the following charges relating to asset impairment and reduction in workforce:

Asset impairment and other restructuring charges:

The asset impairment charges in 2014 related to the consolidation of certain manufacturing operations and administrative offices. The Company closed three Construction Technologies' operations – two in Europe and one in Asia – and consolidated those operations into others in these regions. The Company also closed and consolidated the operations of one of its Performance Materials blending facilities in the U.S. The fair value of the associated assets was estimated using a discounted cash flow approach (a Level 3 fair value input).

In 2015, the Company recognized impairment charges for certain underutilized coiled tubing equipment within the Energy Services segment which have been abandoned by the Company.

In 2016, the Company recognized additional restructuring charges for lease termination costs, inventory write-offs and impairment of assets relating to its exit from the Nitrogen and Pipeline product lines and restructuring of other onshore services within the Energy Services segment as a result of the significant reduction in oil prices and overcapacity in the onshore oil service market. The Company expects to realize further annualized savings from this restructuring program of \$11.5 million (unaudited). In addition, the Company recognized a \$2.9 million gain on previously impaired assets in the Refractories Segment.

Work force reduction:

In 2014, the Company announced a 10% permanent reduction of its workforce including elimination of duplicate corporate functions, deployment of our shared service model, and consolidation and alignment of various corporate functions and regional locations across the Company.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table outlines the amount of restructuring charges recorded within the Consolidated Statements of Income, and the segments they relate to:

Restructuring and Other Items, net	Year Ended December 31, 2016		
	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
<i>Impairment of assets</i>			
Performance Materials	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 0.4
Construction Technologies	-	-	11.7
Energy Services	18.5	33.0	11.6
Corporate	-	1.2	-
Total impairment of assets charges	\$ 18.5	\$ 34.2	\$ 23.7
<i>Severance and other employee costs</i>			
Specialty Minerals	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 3.0
Refractories	-	2.0	0.7
Performance Materials	-	-	5.6
Construction Technologies	-	-	5.8
Energy Services	12.7	9.0	3.7
Total severance and other employee costs	\$ 12.7	\$ 11.0	\$ 18.8
<i>Other</i>			
Refractories	\$ (2.9)	\$ -	\$ -
Performance Materials	-	-	0.7
Total restructuring and other items, net	\$ 28.3	\$ 45.2	\$ 43.2

At December 31, 2016 and 2015, the Company had \$3.6 million and \$7.9 million, respectively, included within other current liabilities within our Consolidated Balance Sheets for cash expenditures needed to satisfy remaining obligations under these reorganization initiatives. The Company expects to pay these amounts by the end of 2017.

The following table is a reconciliation of our restructuring liability balance:

	(millions of dollars)
Restructuring liability, December 31, 2015	\$ 7.9
Additional provisions	12.7
Cash payments	(17.0)
Restructuring liability, December 31, 2016	\$ 3.6

Note 4. Stock-Based Compensation

At the Company's 2015 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, the Company's stockholders ratified the adoption of the Company's 2015 Stock Award and Incentive Plan (the "2015 Plan"), which provides for grants of incentive and non-qualified stock options, restricted stock, stock appreciation rights, stock awards or performance unit awards. The 2015 Plan is substantially similar to the Company's 2001 Stock Award and Incentive Plan (as amended and restated as of March 18, 2009, the "2001 Plan" and collectively with the 2015 Plan, the "Plans"). The Company established the 2015 Plan to increase the total number of shares of common stock reserved and available for issuance by 880,000 shares from the number of shares remaining under the 2001 Plan. With the ratification of the 2015 Plan by the Company's stockholders, the 2001 Plan was discontinued as to new grants (however, all awards previously granted under the 2001 Plan remained unchanged). The Plans are administered by the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors. Stock options granted under the Plan generally have a ten year term. The exercise price for stock options are at prices at or above the fair market value of the common stock on the date of the grant, and each award of stock options will vest ratably over a specified period, generally three years.

Stock-based compensation expense is recognized in the consolidated financial statements for stock options based on the grant date fair value.

Net income for years ended 2016, 2015 and 2014 include \$3.5 million, \$4.0 million and \$3.1 million pre-tax compensation costs, respectively, related to stock option expense as a component of marketing and administrative expenses. All stock option expense is recognized in the consolidated statements of operations. The related tax benefit included in the statement of income on the non-qualified stock options was \$1.4 million, \$1.6 million and \$1.2 million for 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The benefits of tax deductions in excess of the tax benefit from compensation costs that were recognized or would have been recognized are classified as financing inflows on the consolidated statement of cash flows.

Stock Options

The fair value of options granted is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes valuation model. Compensation expense is recognized only for those options expected to vest, with forfeitures estimated at the date of grant based on the Company's historical experience and future expectations. The forfeiture rate assumption used for the periods ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was 7.38%, 7.34% and 7.13%, respectively.

The weighted average grant date fair value for stock options granted during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$14.34, \$22.68 and \$22.89, respectively. The weighted average grant date fair value for stock options vested during 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$20.94, \$17.83 and \$13.59, respectively. The total intrinsic value of stock options exercised during the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$4.9 million, \$2.4 million and \$13.0 million, respectively.

The fair value for stock awards was estimated at the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option valuation model with the following weighted average assumptions for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
Expected life (in years)	6.5	6.4	6.5
Interest rate	1.72%	1.52%	2.16%
Volatility	36.75%	36.86%	37.15%
Expected dividend yield	0.54%	0.33%	0.34%

The expected term of the options represents the estimated period of time until exercise and is based on historical experience of similar awards, based upon contractual terms, vesting schedules, and expectations of future employee behavior. The expected stock-price volatility is based upon the historical and implied volatility of the Company's stock. The interest rate is based upon the implied yield on U.S. Treasury bills with an equivalent remaining term. Estimated dividend yield is based upon historical dividends paid by the Company.

The following table summarizes stock option activity for the year ended December 31, 2016:

	<u>Awards</u>	<u>Weighted Average Exercise Price Per Share</u>	<u>Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Life (Years)</u>	<u>Aggregate Intrinsic Value (Millions)</u>
Awards outstanding at December 31, 2015	1,091,844	\$ 42.29		
Granted	383,622	38.59		
Exercised	(150,944)	36.66		
Canceled	(125,797)	43.78		
Awards outstanding at December 31, 2016	<u>1,198,725</u>	41.66	6.51	\$ 42.7
Awards exercisable at December 31, 2016	<u>767,313</u>	39.43	5.31	29.0

The aggregate intrinsic value above is calculated before applicable income taxes, based on the Company's closing stock price of \$77.25 as of the last business day of the period ended December 31, 2016 had all options been exercised on that date. The weighted average intrinsic value of the options exercised during 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$32.34, \$32.07 and \$40.17 per share, respectively. As of December 31, 2016, total unrecognized stock-based compensation expense related to non-vested stock options was approximately \$3.8 million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of approximately three years.

The Company issues new shares of common stock upon the exercise of stock options.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Non-vested stock option activity for the year ended December 31, 2016 is as follows:

	Awards	Weighted Average Grant date Fair Value Per Share
Nonvested awards outstanding at December 31, 2015	353,859	\$ 57.21
Granted	383,622	38.59
Vested	(191,775)	55.01
Canceled	(114,294)	42.18
Nonvested awards outstanding at December 31, 2016	<u>431,412</u>	45.61

Restricted Stock

The Company has granted key employees rights to receive shares of the Company's common stock pursuant to the Plan. The rights will be deferred for a specified number of years of service, subject to restrictions on transfer and other conditions. Compensation expense for these shares is recognized over the vesting period. The Company granted 155,165 shares, 216,502 shares and 106,575 shares for the periods ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The fair value was determined based on the market value of unrestricted shares. As of December 31, 2016, there was unrecognized stock-based compensation related to restricted stock of \$6.1 million, which will be recognized over approximately the next three years. The compensation expense amortized with respect to all units was approximately \$5.8 million, \$8.8 million and \$4.9 million for the periods ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. In addition, the Company recorded reversals of \$3.8 million, \$1.6 million and \$2.1 million for periods ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively, related to restricted stock forfeitures. Such costs and reversals are included in marketing and administrative expenses.

The following table summarizes the restricted stock activity for the Plan:

	Awards	Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value Per Share
Unvested balance at December 31, 2015	284,245	58.63
Granted	155,165	38.37
Vested	(88,746)	57.38
Canceled	(123,451)	50.72
Unvested balance at December 31, 2016	<u>227,213</u>	49.57

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Note 5. Earnings Per Share (EPS)

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(in millions, except per share data)		
Basic EPS			
Amounts attributable to MTI			
Income from continuing operations	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 90.3
Income from discontinued operations	-	-	2.1
Net income	<u>\$ 133.4</u>	<u>\$ 107.9</u>	<u>\$ 92.4</u>
Weighted average shares outstanding	<u>34.9</u>	<u>34.7</u>	<u>34.5</u>
Earnings per share attributable to MTI			
Continuing operations	\$ 3.82	\$ 3.11	\$ 2.62
Discontinued operations	-	-	0.06
Net income	<u>\$ 3.82</u>	<u>\$ 3.11</u>	<u>\$ 2.68</u>
Diluted EPS			
Amounts attributable to MTI			
Income from continuing operations	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 90.3
Income from discontinued operations	-	-	2.1
Net income	<u>\$ 133.4</u>	<u>\$ 107.9</u>	<u>\$ 92.4</u>
Weighted average shares outstanding	34.9	34.7	34.5
Dilutive effect of stock options and stock units	0.3	0.3	0.3
Weighted average shares outstanding, adjusted	<u>35.2</u>	<u>35.0</u>	<u>34.8</u>
Earnings per share attributable to MTI			
Continuing operations	\$ 3.79	\$ 3.08	\$ 2.59
Discontinued operations	-	-	0.06
Net income	<u>\$ 3.79</u>	<u>\$ 3.08</u>	<u>\$ 2.65</u>

Options to purchase 784 shares, 386,766 shares and 12,888 shares of common stock for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively, were not included in the computation of diluted earnings per share because they were anti-dilutive, as the exercise prices of the options were greater than the average market price of the common shares.

Note 6. Discontinued Operations

During the year ended December 31, 2014, the Company reversed a facility closure accrual of \$2.4 million, net of \$0.6 million tax expense, for a previously impaired facility.

The following table provides selected financial information for the amounts included within discontinued operations in the Consolidated Statements of Income.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
Net sales	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
Production margin	-	-	-
Expenses	-	-	(0.3)
Facility closure costs accrual (reversal)	-	-	(2.4)
Income from operations	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2.7
Provision for taxes on income	-	-	0.6
Income from discontinued operations, net of tax	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 2.1

Note 7. Income Taxes

Income from operations before provision for taxes by domestic and foreign source is as follows:

	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
Income from continuing operations before income taxes and income from affiliates and joint ventures:			
Domestic	\$ 72.9	\$ 32.6	\$ 54.8
Foreign	97.4	100.0	68.2
	\$ 170.3	\$ 132.6	\$ 123.0

The provision (benefit) for taxes on income consists of the following:

	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
Domestic			
Taxes currently payable			
Federal	\$ 18.7	\$ 1.4	\$ 28.1
State and local	4.4	1.2	3.4
Deferred income taxes	(8.8)	(3.2)	(15.1)
Domestic tax provision	14.3	(0.6)	16.4
Foreign			
Taxes currently payable	23.2	22.7	20.3
Deferred income taxes	(2.2)	0.7	(5.9)
Foreign tax provision	21.0	23.4	14.4
Total tax provision	\$ 35.3	\$ 22.8	\$ 30.8

The provision for taxes on income shown in the previous table is classified based on the location of the taxing authority, regardless of the location in which the taxable income is generated.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The major elements contributing to the difference between the U.S. federal statutory tax rate and the consolidated effective tax rate are as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
U.S. statutory rate	35.0%	35.0%	35.0%
Depletion	(6.6)%	(8.4)%	(7.8)%
Difference between tax provided on foreign earnings and the U.S. statutory rate	(6.4)%	(8.3)%	(9.5)%
State and local taxes, net of federal tax benefit	1.1%	0.3%	1.0%
Tax credits and foreign dividends	0.6%	(0.5)%	4.1%
Change in valuation allowance	(1.1)%	(0.9)%	1.7%
Impact of uncertain tax positions	0.4%	(0.1)%	0.4%
Impact of officer's non-deductible compensation	0.1%	2.9%	2.7%
Manufacturing deduction	(2.0)%	(2.0)%	(3.3)%
Other	(0.4)%	(0.8)%	0.7%
Consolidated effective tax rate	<u>20.7%</u>	<u>17.2%</u>	<u>25.0%</u>

The Company believes that its accrued liabilities are sufficient to cover its U.S. and foreign tax contingencies. The tax effects of temporary differences that give rise to significant portions of the deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities are presented below:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
Deferred tax assets attributable to:		
Accrued liabilities	\$ 49.7	\$ 36.1
Net operating loss carry forwards	34.6	37.6
Pension and post-retirement benefits costs	55.4	55.0
Other	35.0	29.1
Valuation allowance	(24.8)	(28.8)
Total deferred tax assets	<u>149.9</u>	<u>129.0</u>
Deferred tax liabilities attributable to:		
Plant and equipment, principally due to differences in depreciation	251.3	247.2
Intangible assets	96.3	98.7
Other	14.0	4.5
Total deferred tax liabilities	<u>361.6</u>	<u>350.4</u>
Net deferred tax asset (liability)	<u>\$ (211.7)</u>	<u>\$ (221.4)</u>

Net deferred tax assets and net deferred tax liabilities are as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
Net deferred tax asset, long-term	\$ 27.1	\$ 30.6
Net deferred tax liability, long-term	238.8	252.0
Net deferred tax asset (liability), long-term	<u>\$ (211.7)</u>	<u>\$ (221.4)</u>

Net deferred tax assets are included in other assets and deferred charges.

The Company has \$34.6 million of deferred tax assets arising from tax loss carry forwards which will be realized through future operations. Carry forwards of approximately \$17.5 million expire over the next 20 years, and \$17.1 million can be utilized over an indefinite period.

On December 31, 2016, the Company had \$13.7 million of total unrecognized tax benefits. Included in this amount were a total of \$9.5 million of unrecognized income tax benefits that, if recognized, would affect the Company's effective tax rate. While it is expected that the amount of unrecognized tax benefits will change in the next 12 months, we do not expect the change to have a significant impact on the results of operations or the financial position of the Company.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table summarizes the activity related to our unrecognized tax benefits:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
Balance at beginning of the year	\$ 4.0	\$ 5.0
Increases related to current year tax positions	8.8	0.5
Increases related to new judgements	0.9	0.8
Decreases related to audit settlements and statute expirations	-	(2.3)
Balance at the end of the year	<u>\$ 13.7</u>	<u>\$ 4.0</u>

The Company's accounting policy is to recognize interest and penalties accrued, relating to unrecognized income tax benefits as part of its provision for income taxes. The Company had recorded a \$0.3 million benefit in interest and penalties during 2016 and had a total accrued balance on December 31, 2016 of \$1.2 million.

The Company operates in multiple taxing jurisdictions, both within and outside the U.S. In certain situations, a taxing authority may challenge positions that the Company has adopted in its income tax filings. The Company, with a few exceptions (none of which are material), is no longer subject to U.S. federal, state, local, and European income tax examinations by tax authorities for years prior to 2010.

Net cash paid for income taxes were \$30.6 million, \$43.8 million and \$5.7 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively.

The Company has not provided for U.S. federal and foreign withholding taxes on \$560.3 million of foreign subsidiaries' undistributed earnings as of December 31, 2016 because such earnings are intended to be permanently reinvested overseas. To the extent the parent company has received foreign earnings as dividends; the foreign taxes paid on those earnings have generated tax credits, which have substantially offset related U.S. income taxes. However, in the event that the entire \$560.3 million of foreign earnings were to be repatriated, incremental taxes may be incurred. We do not believe this amount would be more than \$89.7 million.

Note 8. Inventories

The following is a summary of inventories by major category:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
Raw materials	\$ 70.6	\$ 73.4
Work-in-process	5.4	5.4
Finished goods	80.5	86.1
Packaging and supplies	30.4	30.0
Total inventories	<u>\$ 186.9</u>	<u>\$ 194.9</u>

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Note 9. Property, Plant and Equipment

The major categories of property, plant and equipment and accumulated depreciation and depletion are presented below:

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)	
Mineral rights and reserves	\$ 547.8	\$ 553.8
Land	42.7	39.8
Buildings	195.6	179.7
Machinery and equipment	1,193.6	1,130.7
Furniture and fixtures and other	123.3	209.7
Construction in progress	38.4	53.6
	<u>2,141.4</u>	<u>2,167.3</u>
Less: accumulated depreciation and depletion	(1,089.6)	(1,063.0)
Property, plant and equipment, net	<u>\$ 1,051.8</u>	<u>\$ 1,104.3</u>

Depreciation and depletion expense for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$75.4 million, \$82.1 million and \$76.6 million, respectively.

Note 10. Goodwill and Other Intangible Assets

Goodwill and other intangible assets with indefinite lives are not amortized, but instead are assessed for impairment, at least annually. The carrying amount of goodwill was \$778.7 million and \$781.2 million as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively. The net change in goodwill since December 31, 2015 was attributable to the effects of foreign exchange.

The balance of goodwill by segment and the activity occurring in the past two fiscal years is as follows:

	Specialty Minerals	Refractories	Performance Materials	Construction Technologies	Consolidated
	(millions of dollars)				
Balance at December 31, 2014	\$ 13.7	\$ 49.0	\$ 453.2	\$ 255.0	\$ 770.9
Change in goodwill relating to:					
Purchase price finalization			91.1	(78.3)	12.8
Foreign exchange translation	(0.4)	(2.0)	(0.1)	-	(2.5)
Total Changes	<u>\$ (0.4)</u>	<u>\$ (2.0)</u>	<u>\$ 91.0</u>	<u>\$ (78.3)</u>	<u>\$ 10.3</u>
Balance at December 31, 2015	<u>\$ 13.3</u>	<u>\$ 47.0</u>	<u>\$ 544.2</u>	<u>\$ 176.7</u>	<u>\$ 781.2</u>
Change in goodwill relating to:					
Purchase price finalization	-	-	-	-	-
Foreign exchange translation	(1.2)	(1.3)	-	-	(2.5)
Total Changes	<u>(1.2)</u>	<u>(1.3)</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>-</u>	<u>(2.5)</u>
Balance at December 31, 2016	<u>\$ 12.1</u>	<u>\$ 45.7</u>	<u>\$ 544.2</u>	<u>\$ 176.7</u>	<u>\$ 778.7</u>

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Acquired intangible assets subject to amortization as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015 were as follows:

	Weighted Average Useful Life (Years)	December 31, 2016		December 31, 2015	
		Gross Carrying Amount	Accumulated Amortization	Gross Carrying Amount	Accumulated Amortization
(millions of dollars)					
Tradenames	34	\$ 199.8	\$ 15.3	\$ 199.8	\$ 9.3
Technology	12	18.8	3.6	18.8	2.5
Patents and trademarks	17	6.4	4.8	6.4	4.4
Customer relationships	30	4.5	1.4	4.5	0.6
	28	\$ 229.5	\$ 25.1	\$ 229.5	\$ 16.8

The weighted average amortization period of the acquired intangible assets subject to amortization is approximately 28 years. Amortization expense was approximately \$8.2 million, \$7.9 million and \$4.6 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively and is recorded within the Marketing and administrative expenses line within the Consolidated Statements of Income. The estimated amortization expense is \$7.9 million annually for 2017-2021, and \$164.9 million thereafter.

Note 11. Derivative Financial Instruments and Hedging Activities

As a multinational corporation with operations throughout the world, the Company is exposed to certain market risks. The Company uses a variety of practices to manage these market risks, including, when considered appropriate, derivative financial instruments. The Company's objective is to offset gains and losses resulting from interest rates and foreign currency exposures with gains and losses on the derivative contracts used to hedge them. The Company uses derivative financial instruments only for risk management and not for trading or speculative purposes.

By using derivative financial instruments to hedge exposures to changes in interest rates and foreign currencies, the Company exposes itself to credit risk and market risk. Credit risk is the risk that the counterparty will fail to perform under the terms of the derivative contract. When the fair value of a derivative contract is positive, the counterparty owes the Company, which creates credit risk for the Company. When the fair value of a derivative contract is negative, the Company owes the counterparty, and therefore, it does not face any credit risk. The Company minimizes the credit risk in derivative instruments by entering into transactions with major financial institutions.

Market risk is the adverse effect on the value of a financial instrument that results from a change in interest rates, currency exchange rates, or commodity prices. The market risk associated with interest rate and forward exchange contracts is managed by establishing and monitoring parameters that limit the types and degree of market risk that may be undertaken.

Cash flow hedges:

For derivative instruments that are designated and qualify as cash flow hedges, the Company records the effective portion of the gain or loss in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) as a separate component of shareholders' equity. The Company subsequently reclassifies the effective portion of gain or loss into earnings in the period during which the hedged transaction is recognized in earnings.

The Company utilizes interest rate swaps to limit exposure to market fluctuations on floating-rate debt. During the second quarter of 2016, the Company entered into a floating to fixed interest rate swap for an initial aggregate notional amount of \$300 million. The notional amount at December 31, 2016 was \$257 million. This interest rate swap is designated as a cash flow hedge. The gains and losses associated with this interest rate swap are recorded in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss). The fair value of this swap was an asset of \$2.5 million at December 31, 2016 and is recorded in other assets and deferred charges on the Consolidated Balance Sheet.

In addition, the Company uses foreign exchange forward contracts to protect against foreign currency exchange rate risks inherent in its forecasted inventory purchases. The Company had 2 open foreign exchange contracts as of December 31, 2016, designated as cash flow hedges. The gains and losses associated with these forward exchange contracts are recognized into cost of sales. Gains and losses and hedge ineffectiveness associated with these derivatives were not significant. The fair value of these contracts at December 31, 2016 and 2015 was not significant.

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Other:

The Company is exposed to potential gains or losses from foreign currency fluctuations affecting net investments and earning denominated in foreign currencies. The Company is particularly sensitive to currency exchange rate fluctuations for the following currencies: British pound sterling (GBP), Chinese renminbi (CYN), Euro, Malaysian ringgit (MYR), Polish zloty (PLN), South African Rand (ZAR), Thai baht (THB) and Turkish lira (TRY). When considered appropriate, the Company enters into foreign exchange derivative contracts to mitigate the risk of fluctuations on these exposures. The Company does not designate these contracts for hedge accounting treatment and the changes in fair value of these contracts are recorded in earnings. The Company recorded losses of \$0.6 million and \$0.3 million in other non-operating income (deductions), net within the Consolidated Statements of Income for the years ended 2016 and 2015, respectively. There were 2 open contracts at December 31, 2016. The fair value of these contracts at December 31, 2016 was not significant. There were no open foreign exchange rate contracts at December 31, 2015.

Refer to Note 12 for further discussion of the determination of the fair value of derivatives.

Note 12. Fair Value of Financial Instruments

Fair value is an exchange price that would be received for an asset or paid to transfer a liability (exit price) in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. The Company utilizes market data or assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability. The Company follows a three-tier fair value hierarchy, which prioritizes the inputs used in measuring fair value. These tiers include: Level 1, defined as observable inputs such as quoted prices in active markets; Level 2, defined as inputs other than quoted prices in active markets that are either directly or indirectly observable; and Level 3, defined as unobservable inputs about which little or no market data exists, therefore requiring an entity to develop its own assumptions.

Assets and liabilities measured at fair value are based on one or more of three valuation techniques. The three valuation techniques are as follows:

- Market approach - prices and other relevant information generated by market transactions involving identical or comparable assets or liabilities.
- Cost approach - amount that would be required to replace the service capacity of an asset or replacement cost.
- Income approach - techniques to convert future amounts to a single present amount based on market expectations, including present value techniques, option-pricing and other models.

The Company primarily applies the income approach for foreign exchange derivatives for recurring fair value measurements and attempts to utilize valuation techniques that maximize the use of observable inputs and minimize the use of unobservable inputs.

The following table sets forth by level within the fair value hierarchy the Company's financial assets and liabilities accounted for at fair value on a recurring basis at the end of each of the past two years. Assets and liabilities are classified in their entirety based on the lowest level of input that is significant to the fair value measurement. The Company's assessment of the significance of a particular input to the fair value measurement requires judgment, and may affect the valuation of fair value assets and liabilities and their placement within the fair value hierarchy levels.

Description	Asset / (Liability) Balance at 12/31/16	Fair Value Measurements Using		
		Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
(millions of dollars)				
Deferred compensation plan assets	\$ 10.8	\$ -	\$ 10.8	\$ -
Supplementary pension plan assets	10.4	-	10.4	-
Interest rate swap	2.5	-	2.5	-

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Description	Fair Value Measurements Using			
	Asset / (Liability) Balance at 12/31/16	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)
(millions of dollars)				
Money market funds	\$ 7.5	\$ 7.5	\$ -	\$ -

The fair value of investment in the money market funds is determined by quoted prices in active markets and is categorized as Level 1.

The fair value of foreign exchange contracts is determined based on inputs that are readily available in public markets or can be derived from information available in publicly quoted markets and are categorized as Level 2. Deferred compensation and supplementary pension plan assets related to the acquisition of AMCOL businesses and are valued using quoted prices for similar assets in active markets.

The Company does not have any financial assets or liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis categorized as Level 3, except for pension assets discussed in Note 15, and there were no transfers in or out of Level 3 during the year ended December 31, 2016 and 2015. There were also no changes to the Company's valuation techniques used to measure asset and liability fair values on a recurring basis.

Note 13. Financial Instruments and Concentrations of Credit Risk

The following methods and assumptions were used to estimate the fair value of each class of financial instrument:

Cash and cash equivalents, short-term investments, accounts receivable and payable: The carrying amounts approximate fair value because of the short maturities of these instruments.

Short-term debt and other liabilities: The carrying amounts of short-term debt and other liabilities approximate fair value because of the short maturities of these instruments.

Long-term debt: The fair value of the long-term debt of the Company is estimated based on the quoted market prices for that debt or similar debt and approximates the carrying amount.

Forward exchange contracts: The fair value of forward exchange contracts (used for hedging purposes) is based on information derived from active markets. If appropriate, the Company would enter into forward exchange contracts to mitigate the impact of foreign exchange rate movements on the Company's operating results. It does not engage in speculation. Such foreign exchange contracts would offset losses and gains on the assets, liabilities and transactions being hedged.

Credit risk: The Company provides credit to customers in the ordinary course of business. The Company's customer base is diverse and includes customers located throughout the world. Credit risk results from the possibility that a loss may occur from the failure of another party to perform according to the terms of the contracts. The Company regularly monitors its credit risk exposures and takes steps to mitigate the likelihood of these exposures resulting in actual loss. The Company's extension of credit is based on an evaluation of the customer's financial condition and collateral is generally not required.

The Company's bad debt expense for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was \$6.2 million, \$2.6 million and \$2.4 million, respectively.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Note 14. Long-Term Debt and Commitments

The following is a summary of long term debt:

	December 31,	
	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)	
Term Loan Facility, due May 9, 2021, net of unamortized discount and deferred financing costs of \$26.4 million and \$30.9 million as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, respectively.	\$ 1,061.7	\$ 1,246.4
Japan Loan Facilities	5.8	-
China Loan Facilities	9.2	12.0
Total	\$ 1,076.7	\$ 1,258.4
Less: Current maturities	6.8	3.1
Long-term debt	<u>\$ 1,069.9</u>	<u>\$ 1,255.3</u>

On May 9, 2014, in connection with the acquisition of AMCOL International Corporation (“AMCOL”), the Company entered into a credit agreement providing for a \$1,560 million senior secured term loan facility (the “Term Facility”) and a \$200 million senior secured revolving credit facility (the “Revolving Facility”) and, together with the Term Facility, the “Facilities”).

On June 23, 2015, the Company entered into an amendment (the “First Amendment”) to the credit agreement to reprice the \$1.378 billion then outstanding on the Term Facility. As amended by the First Amendment, the Term Facility had a \$1.078 billion floating rate tranche and a \$300 million fixed rate tranche. On February 14, 2017, the Company entered into an amendment (the “Second Amendment”) to the credit agreement to reprice the \$788 million floating rate tranche then outstanding. See Note 24. The maturity date for loans under the Term Facility was not changed by the First Amendment. As amended by the First Amendment, the loans outstanding under the Term Facility matured on May 9, 2021 and the loans outstanding (if any) and commitments under the Revolving Facility will mature and terminate, as the case may be, on May 9, 2019. After the First Amendment and until the Second Amendment, loans under the variable rate tranche of the Term Facility bore interest at a rate equal to an adjusted LIBOR rate (subject to a floor of 0.75%) plus an applicable margin equal to 3.00% per annum. Loans under the fixed rate tranche of the Term Facility bear interest at a rate of 4.75%. Loans under the Revolving Facility will bear interest at a rate equal to an adjusted LIBOR rate plus an applicable margin equal to 1.75% per annum. Such rates are subject to decrease by up to 25 basis points in the event that, and for so long as, the Company’s net leverage ratio (as defined in the credit agreement) is less than certain thresholds. The variable rate tranche of the Term Facility was issued at par and had a 1% required amortization per year under the First Amendment. The obligations of the Company under the Facilities are unconditionally guaranteed jointly and severally by, subject to certain exceptions, all material domestic subsidiaries of the Company (the “Guarantors”) and secured, subject to certain exceptions, by a security interest in substantially all of the assets of the Company and the Guarantors.

The credit agreement contains certain customary affirmative and negative covenants that limit or restrict the ability of the Company and its restricted subsidiaries to enter into certain transactions or take certain actions. In addition, the credit agreement contains a financial covenant that requires the Company, if on the last day of any fiscal quarter loans or letters of credit were outstanding under the Revolving Facility (excluding up to \$15 million of letters of credit), to maintain a maximum net leverage ratio (as defined in the credit agreement) of, initially, 5.25 to 1.00 for the four fiscal quarter period preceding such day. Such maximum net leverage ratio requirement is subject to decrease during the duration of the facility to a minimum level (when applicable) of 3.50 to 1.00. As of December 31, 2016, there were no loans and \$12.2 million in letters of credit outstanding under the Revolving Facility. The Company is in compliance with all the covenants associated with the Revolving Facility as of the end of the period covered by this report.

During 2016, the Company repaid \$190 million on its Term Facility.

The Company has five committed loan facilities for the funding of new manufacturing facilities in China, for a combined 94.8 million RMB and \$1.8 million. In December 2016, the Company entered into a committed loan facility in Japan in the amount of 680 million Yen (approximately \$5.8 million). As of December 31, 2016, on a combined basis, \$15.0 million was outstanding. Principal will be repaid in accordance with the payment schedules ending in 2021. The Company repaid \$3.2 million on these loans in 2016.

As of December 31, 2016, the Company had \$34.8 million in uncommitted short-term bank credit lines, of which approximately \$6.1 million was in use.

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Short-term borrowings as of December 31, 2016 and 2015 were \$6.1 million and \$6.5 million, respectively. The weighted average interest rate on short-term borrowings outstanding as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015 was 3.7% and 3.4%, respectively.

The aggregate maturities of long-term debt are as follows: \$6.8 million in 2017; \$3.6 million in 2018; \$0.6 million in 2019, \$0.6 million in 2020; \$1,091.5 million in 2021 and \$0.0 million thereafter.

During 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively, the Company incurred interest costs of \$56.5 million, \$62.6 million and \$44.6 million, including \$0.1 million, \$0.5 million and \$0.6 million, respectively, which were capitalized. Interest paid approximated the incurred interest cost.

Note 15. Benefit Plans

Pension Plans and Other Postretirement Benefit Plans

The Company and its subsidiaries have pension plans covering the majority of eligible employees on a contributory or non-contributory basis. Benefits under defined benefit plans are generally based on years of service and an employee's career earnings. Employees generally become fully vested after five years.

The Company also provides postretirement health care and life insurance benefits for the majority of its U.S. retired employees. Employees are generally eligible for benefits upon retirement and completion of a specified number of years of creditable service. The Company does not pre-fund these benefits and has the right to modify or terminate the plan in the future.

In May 2014, as a part of its acquisition of AMCOL businesses, the Company assumed AMCOL's qualified defined benefit pension plan, supplementary pension plan (SERP) and defined contribution plan. The defined benefit pension plan covers substantially all of AMCOL's domestic employees hired before January 1, 2004. The SERP plan provides benefit in excess of qualified plan limitation for certain employees. AMCOL's domestic employees hired on or after January 1, 2004 participate in AMCOL's defined contribution plan whereby the Company will make a retirement contribution into the employee's savings plan equal to 3% of their compensation. For more information on the AMCOL acquisition, see Note 2.

The Company's disclosures for the U.S. plans have been combined with those outside of the U.S. as the international plans do not have significantly different assumptions, and together represent less than 25% of our total benefit obligation.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table set forth Company's pension obligation and funded status at December 31:

	Pension Benefits		Post-Retirement Benefits	
	2016	2015	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)			
Change in benefit obligations:				
Beginning projected benefit obligation	\$ 416.6	\$ 433.8	\$ 9.3	\$ 10.1
Service cost	8.2	10.3	0.3	0.4
Interest cost	13.0	15.4	0.3	0.3
Actuarial (gain)/loss	21.2	(17.0)	(0.6)	(0.9)
Benefits paid	(18.3)	(19.5)	-	(0.4)
Settlements	(0.9)			
Acquisition				
Foreign exchange impact	(11.4)	(7.0)	-	(0.2)
Other	(0.5)	0.6		
Ending projected benefit obligation	427.9	416.6	9.3	9.3
Change in plan assets:				
Beginning fair value	282.5	295.8	-	-
Actual return on plan assets	22.9	1.2	-	-
Employer contributions	10.5	10.0	-	0.4
Plan participants' contributions	0.4	0.5	-	-
Benefits paid	(18.3)	(19.5)	-	(0.4)
Settlements	(0.5)	-	-	-
Acquisition	-	-	-	-
Foreign exchange impact	(8.2)	(5.5)	-	-
Ending fair value	289.3	282.5	-	-
Funded status of the plan	\$ (138.6)	\$ (134.1)	\$ (9.3)	\$ (9.3)

Amounts recognized in the consolidated balance sheet consist of:

	Pension Benefits		Post-Retirement Benefits	
	2016	2015	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)			
Current liability	\$ (0.8)	\$ (0.9)	\$ (0.6)	\$ (0.7)
Non-current liability	(137.8)	(133.2)	(8.7)	(8.6)
Recognized liability	<u>\$ (138.6)</u>	<u>\$ (134.1)</u>	<u>\$ (9.3)</u>	<u>\$ (9.3)</u>

The current portion of pension liabilities is included in accrued compensation and related items.

Amounts recognized in accumulated other comprehensive income, net of related tax effects, consist of:

	Pension Benefits		Post-Retirement Benefits	
	2016	2015	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)			
Net actuarial (gain) loss	\$ 82.1	\$ 80.3	\$ (1.7)	\$ (1.5)
Prior service cost	(0.1)	0.2	(2.4)	(4.3)
Amount recognized end of year	<u>\$ 82.0</u>	<u>\$ 80.5</u>	<u>\$ (4.1)</u>	<u>\$ (5.8)</u>

The accumulated benefit obligation for all defined benefit pension plans was \$394.5 million and \$382.6 million at December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Changes in the Plan assets and benefit obligations recognized in other comprehensive income:

	Pension Benefits		Post-Retirement Benefits	
	2016	2015	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)			
Current year actuarial gain (loss)	\$ (8.7)	\$ 0.5	\$ 0.3	\$ 0.6
Amortization of actuarial (gain) loss	6.8	7.7	(0.1)	(0.1)
Amortization of prior service credit (gain) loss	0.4	0.5	(1.9)	(1.9)
Total recognized in other comprehensive income	<u>\$ (1.5)</u>	<u>\$ 8.7</u>	<u>\$ (1.7)</u>	<u>\$ (1.4)</u>

The components of net periodic benefit costs are as follows:

	Pension Benefits			Post-Retirement Benefits		
	2016	2015	2014	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)					
Service cost	\$ 8.2	\$ 10.3	\$ 8.9	\$ 0.3	\$ 0.4	\$ 0.4
Interest cost	13.0	15.4	14.9	0.3	0.3	0.4
Expected return on plan assets	(18.6)	(19.7)	(19.4)	-	-	-
Amortization of prior service cost	0.6	0.8	1.0	(3.1)	(3.1)	(3.1)
Recognized net actuarial (gain) loss	10.7	12.1	7.4	(0.2)	(0.1)	(0.2)
Settlement/curtailment loss	0.3	-	-	-	-	-
Net periodic benefit cost	<u>\$ 14.2</u>	<u>\$ 18.9</u>	<u>\$ 12.8</u>	<u>\$ (2.7)</u>	<u>\$ (2.5)</u>	<u>\$ (2.5)</u>

Unrecognized prior service cost is amortized over the average remaining service period of each active employee.

The Company's funding policy for U.S. plans generally is to contribute annually into trust funds at a rate that provides for future plan benefits and maintains appropriate funded percentages. Annual contributions to the U.S. qualified plans are at least sufficient to satisfy regulatory funding standards and are not more than the maximum amount deductible for income tax purposes. The funding policies for the international plans conform to local governmental and tax requirements. The plans' assets are invested primarily in stocks and bonds.

The 2017 estimated amortization of amounts in other accumulated comprehensive income are as follows:

	Pension Benefits	Post-Retirement Benefits
	(millions of dollars)	
Amortization of prior service credit (gain) loss	\$ 0.1	\$ (3.1)
Amortization of net (gain) loss	10.6	(0.3)
Total cost to be recognized	<u>\$ 10.7</u>	<u>\$ (3.4)</u>

Additional Information

The weighted average assumptions used to determine net periodic benefit cost in the accounting for the pension benefit plans and other benefit plans for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 are as follows:

	2016	2015	2014
Discount rate	3.88%	3.71%	4.39%
Expected return on plan assets	6.89%	6.89%	7.34%
Rate of compensation increase	3.03%	3.04%	3.08%

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The weighted average assumptions used to determine benefit obligations for the pension benefit plans and other benefit plans at December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 are as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
Discount rate	3.60%	3.89%	3.66%
Rate of compensation increase	2.96%	3.04%	3.05%

For 2016, 2015 and 2014, the discount rate was based on a Citigroup yield curve of high quality corporate bonds with cash flows matching our plans' expected benefit payments. The expected return on plan assets is based on our asset allocation mix and our historical return, taking into account current and expected market conditions. The actual return on pension assets was approximately 8% in 2016, 1% in 2015 and 7% in 2014.

The Company maintains a self-funded health insurance plan for its retirees. This plan provided that the maximum health care cost trend rate would be 5%. Effective June 2010, the Company amended its plan to change the eligibility requirement for retirees and revised its plan so that increases in expected health care costs would be borne by the retiree.

Plan Assets

The Company's pension plan weighted average asset allocation percentages at December 31, 2016 and 2015 by asset category are as follows:

Asset Category	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
Equity securities	60.2%	58.9%
Fixed income securities	32.7%	34.7%
Real estate	0.7%	0.9%
Other	6.4%	5.5%
Total	<u>100.0%</u>	<u>100.0%</u>

The Company's pension plan fair values at December 31, 2016 and 2015 by asset category are as follows:

Asset Category	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
Equity securities	\$ 174.1	\$ 166.4
Fixed income securities	94.7	98.0
Real estate	1.9	2.5
Other	18.6	15.6
Total	<u>289.3</u>	<u>282.5</u>

The following table presents domestic and foreign pension plan assets information at December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 (the measurement date of pension plan assets):

	<u>U.S. Plans</u>			<u>International Plans</u>		
	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>					
Fair value of plan assets	\$ 221.9	\$ 213.0	\$ 224.1	\$ 67.4	\$ 69.5	\$ 71.7

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table summarizes our defined benefit pension plan assets measured at fair value as of December 31, 2016:

Pension Assets Fair Value as of December 31, 2016	Quoted Prices In Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total
	(millions of dollars)			
Equity securities				
US equities	\$ 155.0	\$ 0.2	\$ -	\$ 155.2
Non-US equities	18.9	-	-	18.9
Fixed income securities				
Corporate debt instruments	63.4	31.3	-	94.7
Real estate and other				
Real estate	-	-	1.9	1.9
Other	-	0.2	18.4	18.6
Total assets	\$ 237.3	\$ 31.7	\$ 20.3	\$ 289.3

The following table summarizes our defined benefit pension plan assets measured at fair value as of December 31, 2015:

Pension Assets Fair Value as of December 31, 2015	Quoted Prices In Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Other Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total
	(millions of dollars)			
Equity securities				
US equities	\$ 143.7	\$ 0.2	\$ -	\$ 143.9
Non-US equities	22.5	-	-	22.5
Fixed income securities				
Corporate debt instruments	65.4	32.6	-	98.0
Real estate and other				
Real estate	-	-	2.5	2.5
Other	-	0.2	15.4	15.6
Total assets	231.6	33.0	17.9	282.5

U.S. equities—This class included actively and passively managed common equity securities comprised primarily of large-capitalization stocks with value, core and growth strategies.

Non-U.S. equities—This class included actively managed common equity securities comprised primarily of international large-capitalization stocks.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Fixed income—This class included debt instruments issued by the US Treasury, and corporate debt instruments.

Real Estate and other— This class includes assets related to real estate and other assets such as insurance contracts.

Asset classified as Level 1 are valued using quoted prices on major stock exchange on which individual assets are traded. Our Level 2 assets are valued using net asset value. The net asset value is quoted on a private market that is not active; however, the unit price is based on the underlying investments that are traded on an active market. Our Level 3 assets are estimated at fair value based on the most recent financial information available for the underlying securities, which are not traded on active market, and represents significant unobservable input.

The following is a reconciliation of changes in fair value measurement of plan assets using significant unobservable inputs (Level 3):

	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>
Beginning balance at December 31, 2014	\$ 26.6
Purchases, sales, settlements	-
Actual return on plan assets still held at reporting date	(8.4)
Foreign exchange impact	(0.3)
Ending balance at December 31, 2015	\$ 17.9
Purchases, sales, settlements	-
Actual return on plan assets still held at reporting date	3.0
Foreign exchange impact	(0.6)
Ending balance at December 31, 2016	<u>\$ 20.3</u>

There were no transfers in or out of Level 3 during the year ended December 31, 2016 and 2015

Contributions

The Company expects to contribute \$12.2 million to its pension plans and \$0.6 million to its other post-retirement benefit plan in 2017.

Estimated Future Benefit Payments

The following benefit payments, which reflect expected future service, as appropriate, are expected to be paid:

	<u>Pension</u> <u>Benefits</u>	<u>Other</u> <u>Benefits</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
2017	\$ 20.2	\$ 0.6
2018	\$ 21.2	\$ 0.7
2019	\$ 22.4	\$ 0.7
2020	\$ 23.0	\$ 0.7
2021	\$ 23.2	\$ 0.8
2022-2026	\$ 123.8	\$ 4.0

Investment Strategies

The investment strategy for pension plan assets is to maintain a broadly diversified portfolio designed to both preserve and grow plan assets to meet future plan obligations. The Company's average rate of return on assets from inception through December 31, 2016 was over 9%. The Company's assets are strategically allocated among equity, debt and other investments to achieve a diversification level that dampens fluctuations in investment returns. The Company's long-term investment strategy is an investment portfolio mix of approximately 55%-65% in equity securities, 30%-35% in fixed income securities and 0%-15% in other securities.

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Savings and Investment Plans

The Company maintains a voluntary Savings and Investment Plan (a 401(k) plan) for most non-union employees in the U.S. On January 1, 2015, as a result of the acquisition and subsequent integration of AMCOL, the AMCOL 401(k) plan was merged into the Minerals Technologies Inc. Savings and Investment Plan. Within prescribed limits, the Company bases its contribution to the Savings and Investment Plan on employee contributions. The Company's contributions amounted to \$5.1 million, \$6.3 million and \$2.9 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. The Company also contributed \$2.6 million to the AMCOL 401(k) plan in 2014.

Note 16. Leases

The Company has several non-cancelable operating leases, primarily for office space and equipment. Rent expense amounted to approximately \$16.2 million, \$19.5 million and \$19.8 million for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014, respectively. Total future minimum rental commitments under all non-cancelable leases for each of the years 2017 through 2021 and in aggregate thereafter are approximately \$14.4 million, \$12.1 million, \$9.9 million, \$8.2 million, \$6.6 million, respectively, and \$33.1 million thereafter. Total future minimum rentals to be received under non-cancelable subleases were approximately \$4.2 million at December 31, 2016.

Total future minimum payments to be received under direct financing leases for each of the years 2017 through 2021 and the aggregate thereafter are approximately: \$0.3 million, \$0.3 million, \$0.2 million, \$0.1 million, \$0.1 million and \$-- million thereafter.

Note 17. Litigation

We are party to a number of lawsuits arising in the normal course of our business.

On May 8, 2013, Armada (Singapore) PTE Limited, an ocean shipping company now in bankruptcy ("Armada") filed a case in federal court in the Northern District of Illinois against AMCOL and certain of its subsidiaries (*Armada (Singapore) PTE Limited v. AMCOL International Corp., et al., United States District Court for the Northern District of Illinois*, Case No. 13 CV 3455). We acquired AMCOL and its subsidiaries on May 9, 2014. A co-defendant is Ashapura Minechem Limited, a company located in Mumbai, India ("AML"). During the relevant time period, 2008-2010, AMCOL owned slightly over 20% of the outstanding AML stock through December 2009, after which it owned approximately 19%. In 2008, AML entered into two contracts of affreightment ("COA") with Armada for over 60 ship loads of bauxite from India to China. After one shipment, AML made no further shipments, which led Armada to file arbitrations in London against AML, one for each COA. AML did not appear in the London arbitrations and default awards of approximately \$70 million were entered. The litigation filed by Armada against AMCOL and AML relates to these awards, which AML has not paid. The substance of the allegations by Armada is that AML and AMCOL engaged in illegal conduct to thwart Armada's efforts to collect the arbitration award. The counts in the complaint include both violations of the Illinois Fraudulent Transfer laws, as well as federal RICO violations. The lawsuit seeks money damages, as well as injunctive relief. Fact discovery is scheduled to close in the first quarter of 2017. We have accrued an estimate of potential damages for the Armada lawsuit, the amount of which was not material to our financial position, results of operations or cash flows.

Certain of the Company's subsidiaries are among numerous defendants in a number of cases seeking damages for exposure to silica or to asbestos containing materials. The Company currently has three pending silica cases and 18 pending asbestos cases. To date, 1,492 silica cases and 48 asbestos cases have been dismissed, not including any lawsuits against AMCOL or American Colloid Company dismissed prior to our acquisition of AMCOL. Six new asbestos cases were filed in the period, including three new cases in the fourth quarter of 2016, and one additional case in the first quarter of 2017. No asbestos or silica cases were closed during the fourth quarter, however, as previously reported, twenty-seven silica cases and two asbestos cases were closed during 2016. Most of these claims do not provide adequate information to assess their merits, the likelihood that the Company will be found liable, or the magnitude of such liability, if any. Additional claims of this nature may be made against the Company or its subsidiaries. At this time management anticipates that the amount of the Company's liability, if any, and the cost of defending such claims, will not have a material effect on its financial position or results of operations.

The Company has settled only one silica lawsuit, for a nominal amount, and no asbestos lawsuits to date (not including any that may have been settled by AMCOL prior to completion of the acquisition). We are unable to state an amount or range of amounts claimed in any of the lawsuits because state court pleading practices do not require identifying the amount of the claimed damage. The aggregate cost to the Company for the legal defense of these cases since inception continues to be insignificant. The majority of the costs of defense for these cases, excluding cases against AMCOL or American Colloid, are reimbursed by Pfizer Inc. pursuant to the terms of certain agreements entered into in connection with the Company's initial public offering in 1992. Of the 18 pending asbestos cases all except two allege liability based on products sold largely or entirely prior to the initial public offering, and for which the Company is therefore entitled to indemnification pursuant to such agreements. The two exceptions pertain to a pending asbestos case against American Colloid Company, and one for which no period of alleged exposure has been stated by plaintiffs. Our experience has been that the Company is not liable to plaintiffs in any of these lawsuits and the Company does not expect to pay any settlements or jury verdicts in these lawsuits.

**MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Environmental Matters

On April 9, 2003, the Connecticut Department of Environmental Protection issued an administrative consent order relating to our Canaan, Connecticut, plant where both our Refractories segment and Specialty Minerals segment have operations. We agreed to the order, which includes provisions requiring investigation and remediation of contamination associated with historic use of polychlorinated biphenyls ("PCBs") and mercury at a portion of the site. We have completed the required investigations and submitted several reports characterizing the contamination and assessing site-specific risks. We are awaiting regulators' approval of the risk assessment report, which will form the basis for a proposal by the Company concerning eventual remediation.

We believe that the most likely form of overall site remediation will be to leave the existing contamination in place (with some limited soil removal), encapsulate it, and monitor the effectiveness of the encapsulation. We anticipate that a substantial portion of the remediation cost will be borne by the United States based on its involvement at the site from 1942 – 1964, as historic documentation indicates that PCBs and mercury were first used at the facility at a time of U.S. government ownership for production of materials needed by the military. Pursuant to a Consent Decree entered on October 24, 2014, the United States paid the Company \$2.3 million in the 4th quarter of 2014 to resolve the Company's claim for response costs for investigation and initial remediation activities at this facility through October 24, 2014. Contribution by the United States to any future costs of investigation or additional remediation has, by agreement, been left unresolved. Though the cost of the likely remediation remains uncertain pending completion of the phased remediation decision process, we have estimated that the Company's share of the cost of the encapsulation and limited soil removal described above would approximate \$0.4 million, which has been accrued as of December 31, 2016.

The Company is evaluating options for upgrading the wastewater treatment facilities at its Adams, Massachusetts plant. This work has been undertaken pursuant to an administrative Consent Order originally issued by the Massachusetts Department of Environmental Protection ("DEP") on June 18, 2002. This order was amended on June 1, 2009 and on June 2, 2010. The amended Order includes the investigation by January 1, 2022 of options for ensuring that the facility's wastewater treatment ponds will not result in unpermitted discharge to groundwater. Additional requirements of the amendment include the submittal by July 1, 2022 of a plan for closure of a historic lime solids disposal area. Preliminary engineering reviews completed in 2005 indicate that the estimated cost of wastewater treatment upgrades to operate this facility beyond 2024 may be between \$6 million and \$8 million. The Company estimates that the remaining remediation costs would approximate \$0.4 million, which has been accrued as of December 31, 2016.

The Company and its subsidiaries are not party to any other material pending legal proceedings, other than routine litigation incidental to their businesses.

Note 18. Stockholders' Equity

Capital Stock

The Company's authorized capital stock consists of 100 million shares of common stock, par value \$0.10 per share, of which 34,969,987 shares and 34,784,395 shares were outstanding at December 31, 2016 and 2015, respectively, and 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, none of which were issued and outstanding.

Cash Dividends

Cash dividends of \$7.0 million or \$0.20 per common share were paid during 2016. In January 2017, a cash dividend of approximately \$1.7 million or \$0.05 per share, was declared, payable in the first quarter of 2017.

Stock Award and Incentive Plan

At the Company's 2015 Annual Meeting of Stockholders, the Company's stockholders ratified the adoption of the Company's 2015 Stock Award and Incentive Plan (the "2015 Plan"), which provides for grants of incentive and non-qualified stock options, restricted stock, stock appreciation rights, stock awards or performance unit awards. The 2015 Plan is substantially similar to the Company's 2001 Stock Award and Incentive Plan (as amended and restated as of March 18, 2009, the "2001 Plan" and collectively with the 2015 Plan, the "Plans"). The Company established the 2015 Plan to increase the total number of shares of common stock reserved and available for issuance by 880,000 shares from the number of shares remaining under the 2001 Plan. With the ratification of the 2015 Plan by the Company's stockholders, the 2001 Plan was discontinued as to new grants (however, all awards previously granted under the 2001 Plan remained unchanged). The Plans are administered by the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors. Stock options granted under the Plan have a term not in excess of ten years. The exercise price for stock options will not be less than the fair market value of the common stock on the date of the grant, and each award of stock options will vest ratably over a specified period, generally three years.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table summarizes stock option and restricted stock activity for the Plans:

	Stock Options			Restricted Shares	
	Shares Available for Grant	Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price Per Share (\$)	Shares	Weighted Average Exercise Price Per Share (\$)
Balance January 1, 2014	1,190,964	1,131,415	\$ 32.42	185,572	\$ 37.65
Granted	(279,643)	173,068	58.25	106,575	59.16
Exercised/vested	-	(323,636)	30.57	(61,621)	36.51
Canceled	84,806	(29,768)	41.88	(55,038)	38.73
Balance December 31, 2014	996,127	951,079	37.46	175,488	50.56
Authorized	880,000	-	-	-	-
Granted	(455,275)	238,773	60.40	216,502	60.32
Exercised/vested	-	(74,839)	33.12	(59,801)	47.51
Canceled	71,113	(23,169)	60.22	(47,944)	51.43
Balance December 31, 2015	1,491,965	1,091,844	42.29	284,245	58.63
Authorized	-	-	-	-	-
Granted	(538,787)	383,622	38.59	155,165	38.37
Exercised/vested	-	(150,944)	36.66	(88,746)	57.38
Canceled	249,248	(125,797)	43.78	(123,451)	50.72
Balance December 31, 2016	<u>1,202,426</u>	<u>1,198,725</u>	41.66	<u>227,213</u>	49.57

Note 19. Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)

Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) at December 31 comprised of the following components:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>	
Cumulative foreign currency translation	\$ (147.3)	\$ (108.7)
Unrecognized pension costs (net of tax benefit of \$39.4 in 2016 and \$38.7 in 2015)	(78.0)	(74.8)
Unrealized gain (loss) on cash flow hedges (net of tax expense of \$1.8 in 2016 and \$1.0 in 2015)	4.2	2.6
	<u>\$ (221.1)</u>	<u>\$ (180.9)</u>

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The following table summarizes the changes in other comprehensive income (loss) by component:

	Year Ended December 31,					
	2016			2015		
	Pre-Tax Amount	Tax (Expense) Benefit	Net-of- Tax Amount	Pre-Tax Amount	Tax (Expense) Benefit	Net-of- Tax Amount
	(millions of dollars)					
Foreign currency translation adjustment	(40.2)	-	\$ (40.2)	(76.6)	-	\$ (76.6)
Pension plans:						
Net actuarial gains (losses) and prior service costs arising during the period	(12.5)	4.1	(8.4)	0.5	0.5	1.0
Amortization of net actuarial (gains) losses and prior service costs	8.0	(2.8)	5.2	9.6	(3.3)	6.3
Unrealized gains (losses) on cash flow hedges	2.4	(0.8)	1.6	-	-	-
Total other comprehensive income (loss)	\$ (42.3)	\$ 0.5	\$ (41.8)	\$ (66.5)	\$ (2.8)	\$ (69.3)

The pre-tax amortization amounts of pension plans in the table above are included within the components of net periodic pension benefit costs (see note 15) and the related tax amounts are included within provision for taxes on income line within Consolidated Statements of Income.

Note 20. Accounting for Asset Retirement Obligations

The Company records asset retirement obligations in which the Company will be required to retire tangible long-lived assets. These are primarily related to its PCC satellite facilities and mining operations. The Company has also recorded the provisions related to conditional asset retirement obligations at its facilities. The Company has recorded asset retirement obligations at all of its facilities except where there are no contractual or legal obligations. The associated asset retirement costs are capitalized as part of the carrying amount of the long-lived asset.

The following is a reconciliation of asset retirement obligations as of December 31, 2016 and 2015:

	2016	2015
	(millions of dollars)	
Asset retirement liability, beginning of period	\$ 21.4	\$ 23.0
Accretion expense	2.5	2.8
Reversals	-	(1.0)
Payments	(1.6)	(1.9)
Foreign currency translation	(0.8)	(1.5)
Asset retirement liability, end of period	<u>\$ 21.5</u>	<u>\$ 21.4</u>

The Company mines various minerals using a surface mining process that requires the removal of overburden. In certain areas and under various governmental regulations, the Company is obligated to restore the land comprising each mining site to its original condition at the completion of the mining activity. This liability will be adjusted to reflect the passage of time, mining activities, and changes in estimated future cash outflows

The current portion of the liability of approximately \$2.1 million is included in other current liabilities and the long-term portion of the liability of approximately \$19.4 million is included in other non-current liabilities in the Consolidated Balance Sheet as of December 31, 2016.

Accretion expense is included in cost of goods sold in the Company's Consolidated Statements of Income.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Note 21. Non-Controlling Interests

In May 2014, the Company acquired the remaining 20% non-controlling interest in CETCO Lining Technologies India Pvt. Ltd. ("CETCO India"), a part of our Construction Technologies operations for \$2.1 million. The following table sets forth the effects of this transaction on equity attributable to MTI shareholders:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2016	2015	2014
	(millions of dollars)		
Net income attributable to MTI	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 92.4
Transfer from non-controlling interest:			
Decrease in additional paid-in capital for purchase of the remaining non-controlling interest in CETCO India	-	-	(2.1)
Change from net income attributable to MTI and transfers from non-controlling interest	\$ 133.4	\$ 107.9	\$ 90.3

Note 22. Segment and Related Information

The Company determines its operating segments based on the discrete financial information that is regularly evaluated by its chief operating decision maker, our President and Chief Executive Officer, in deciding how to allocate resources and in assessing performance. The Company's operating segments are strategic business units that offer different products and serve different markets. They are managed separately and require different technology and marketing strategies.

The Company has 5 reportable segments: Specialty Minerals, Refractories, Performance Materials, Construction Technologies, and Energy Services.

- The Specialty Minerals segment produces and sells the synthetic mineral product precipitated calcium carbonate ("PCC") and processed mineral product quicklime ("lime"), and mines mineral ores then processes and sells natural mineral products, primarily limestone and talc.

- The Refractories segment produces and markets monolithic and shaped refractory materials and specialty products, services and application and measurement equipment, and calcium metal and metallurgical wire products.

- The Performance Materials segment is a leading supplier of bentonite and bentonite-related products. This segment also supplies chromite and leonardite and operates more than 25 mining or production facilities worldwide.

- The Construction Technologies segment provides products for non-residential construction, environmental and infrastructure projects worldwide. It serves customers engaged in a broad range of construction projects, including site remediation, concrete waterproofing for underground structures, liquid containment on projects ranging from landfills to flood control, and drilling applications including foundation, slurry wall, tunneling, water well, and horizontal drilling.

- The Energy Services segment provides services to improve the production, costs, compliance, and environmental impact of activities performed in oil and gas industry. This segment offers a range of services for off-shore filtration and well testing to the worldwide oil and gas industry.

The accounting policies of the segments are the same as those described in the summary of significant accounting policies. The Company evaluates performance based on the operating income of the respective business units. The costs deducted to arrive at operating profit do not include several items, such as net interest or income tax expense. Depreciation expense related to corporate assets is allocated to the business segments and is included in their income from operations. However, such corporate depreciable assets are not included in the segment assets. Intersegment sales and transfers are not significant.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Segment information for the years ended December 31, 2016, 2015 and 2014 was as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>		
Net Sales			
Specialty Minerals	\$ 591.5	\$ 624.6	\$ 650.1
Refractories	274.5	295.9	359.7
Performance Materials	502.8	514.8	352.8
Construction Technologies	183.3	180.1	152.3
Energy Services	85.9	182.2	210.1
Total	<u>1,638.0</u>	<u>1,797.6</u>	<u>1,725.0</u>
Income from Operations			
Specialty Minerals	102.7	100.8	95.8
Refractories	37.0	27.8	43.2
Performance Materials	97.5	95.9	41.0
Construction Technologies	23.6	22.5	(0.8)
Energy Services	(25.9)	(27.9)	16.3
Total	<u>234.9</u>	<u>219.1</u>	<u>195.5</u>
Depreciation, Depletion and Amortization			
Specialty Minerals	34.9	34.0	35.6
Refractories	6.9	7.5	10.8
Performance Materials	30.4	31.7	18.7
Construction Technologies	8.5	7.7	5.8
Energy Services	11.2	17.4	13.5
Total	<u>91.9</u>	<u>98.3</u>	<u>84.4</u>
Segment Assets			
Specialty Minerals	491.7	505.3	494.4
Refractories	283.4	292.7	357.3
Performance Materials	1,606.4	1,626.0	1,584.4
Construction Technologies	335.7	339.4	447.7
Energy Services	104.7	154.7	228.9
Total	<u>2,821.9</u>	<u>2,918.1</u>	<u>3,112.7</u>
Capital Expenditures			
Specialty Minerals	40.4	51.9	44.4
Refractories	5.9	11.1	11.7
Performance Materials	11.2	9.8	7.3
Construction Technologies	1.6	1.3	1.0
Energy Services	1.4	11.1	16.7
Total	<u>60.5</u>	<u>85.2</u>	<u>81.1</u>

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

A reconciliation of the totals reported for the operating segments to the applicable line items in the consolidated financial statements is as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>		
Income from Operations before Provision for Taxes on Income			
Income from operations for reportable segments	\$ 234.9	\$ 219.1	\$ 195.5
Acquisition related transaction and integration costs	(8.0)	(11.8)	(19.1)
Unallocated corporate expenses	(6.0)	(7.0)	(7.6)
Consolidated income from operations	220.9	200.3	168.8
Non-operating deductions, net	(50.6)	(67.7)	(45.8)
Income from continuing operations before provision for taxes on income	<u>170.3</u>	<u>132.6</u>	<u>123.0</u>
Total Assets			
Total segment assets	2,821.9	2,918.1	3,112.7
Corporate assets	41.5	61.9	44.8
Consolidated total assets	<u>2,863.4</u>	<u>2,980.0</u>	<u>3,157.5</u>
Capital Expenditures			
Total segment capital expenditures	60.5	85.2	81.1
Corporate capital expenditures	1.9	0.8	0.7
Consolidated capital expenditures	<u>62.4</u>	<u>86.0</u>	<u>81.8</u>

Financial information relating to the Company's operations by geographic area was as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	<u>(millions of dollars)</u>		
Net Sales			
United States	\$ 936.2	\$ 1,049.6	\$ 1,004.4
Canada/Latin America	82.6	86.3	90.2
Europe/Africa	338.8	382.1	407.7
Asia	280.4	279.6	222.7
Total International	701.8	748.0	720.6
Consolidated net sales	<u>1,638.0</u>	<u>1,797.6</u>	<u>1,725.0</u>
Long-Lived Assets			
United States	\$ 1,794.5	\$ 1,829.3	\$ 1,865.2
Canada/Latin America	14.8	13.0	18.8
Europe/Africa	98.2	117.6	136.8
Asia	127.3	138.3	144.3
Total International	240.3	268.9	299.9
Consolidated long-lived assets	<u>2,034.8</u>	<u>2,098.2</u>	<u>2,165.1</u>

Net sales and long-lived assets are attributed to countries and geographic areas based on the location of the legal entity. No individual foreign country represents more than 10% of consolidated net sales or consolidated long-lived assets.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The Company's sales by product category are as follows:

	<u>2016</u>	<u>2015</u>	<u>2014</u>
	(millions of dollars)		
Paper PCC	\$ 387.9	\$ 423.3	\$ 454.5
Specialty PCC	64.3	64.8	66.1
Talc	55.7	55.9	55.5
Ground Calcium Carbonate	83.6	80.6	74.0
Refractory Products	219.0	230.7	273.9
Metallurgical Products	55.5	65.2	85.8
Metalcasting	258.0	266.4	181.4
Household, Personal Care and Specialty Products	171.2	172.7	108.0
Basic Minerals and Other Products	73.6	75.7	63.4
Environmental Products	78.9	69.7	70.7
Building Materials and Other Products	104.4	110.4	81.6
Energy Services	85.9	182.2	210.1
Total	<u>1,638.0</u>	<u>1,797.6</u>	<u>1,725.0</u>

Note 23. Quarterly Financial Data (unaudited)

	<u>2016 quarters</u>			
	<u>First</u>	<u>Second</u>	<u>Third</u>	<u>Fourth</u>
	(millions of dollars, except per share amounts)			
Net sales by segment				
Specialty Minerals segment	\$ 155.6	\$ 150.6	\$ 147.3	\$ 138.0
Refractories segment	69.2	73.9	63.4	68.0
Performance Materials segment	119.0	128.6	119.5	135.7
Construction Technologies segment	40.6	53.9	49.5	39.3
Energy Services segment	<u>25.8</u>	<u>20.0</u>	<u>19.8</u>	<u>\$ 20.3</u>
Net sales	410.2	427.0	399.5	401.3
Gross profit	112.7	121.1	115.2	111.4
Income from operations	57.6	39.5	67.3	56.5
Income from continuing operations	34.8	22.3	42.5	37.5
Net income attributable to Minerals Technologies Inc. (MTI)	<u>33.9</u>	<u>21.2</u>	<u>41.6</u>	<u>36.7</u>
Basic earnings per share attributable to MTI shareholders:				
Income from continuing operations	\$ 0.97	\$ 0.61	\$ 1.19	\$ 1.05
Loss from discontinued operations	-	-	-	-
Net income	<u>\$ 0.97</u>	<u>\$ 0.61</u>	<u>\$ 1.19</u>	<u>\$ 1.05</u>
Diluted earnings per share attributable to MTI shareholders:				
Income from continuing operations	\$ 0.97	\$ 0.60	\$ 1.18	\$ 1.04
Loss from discontinued operations	-	-	-	-
Net income	<u>\$ 0.97</u>	<u>\$ 0.60</u>	<u>\$ 1.18</u>	<u>\$ 1.04</u>
Market price range per share of common stock:				
High	\$ 57.12	\$ 61.66	\$ 72.51	\$ 82.90
Low	\$ 37.03	\$ 52.53	\$ 56.00	\$ 66.10
Close	\$ 57.12	\$ 57.38	\$ 70.69	\$ 77.25
Dividends paid per common share	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. AND SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

2015 quarters				
First	Second	Third	Fourth	
(millions of dollars, except per share amounts)				

Net sales by segment				
Specialty Minerals segment	\$ 154.0	\$ 156.5	\$ 156.5	\$ 157.6
Refractories segment	73.9	76.4	77.4	68.2
Performance Materials segment	127.9	129.1	126.5	131.3
Construction Technologies segment	38.9	52.1	49.7	39.4
Energy Services segment	58.6	49.3	40.9	33.4
Net sales	453.3	463.4	451.0	429.9
Gross profit	116.6	126.2	118.9	109.3
Income from operations	59.9	52.8	49.9	37.7
Income from continuing operations	36.0	27.5	30.3	17.8
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	-	-	-	-
Net income attributable to MTI	35.1	26.6	29.2	17.0
Basic earnings per share attributable to MTI shareholders:				
Income from continuing operations	\$ 1.01	\$ 0.77	\$ 0.84	\$ 0.49
Loss from discontinued operations	-	-	-	-
Net income	\$ 1.01	\$ 0.77	\$ 0.84	\$ 0.49
Diluted earnings per share attributable to MTI shareholders:				
Income from continuing operations	\$ 1.01	\$ 0.76	\$ 0.83	\$ 0.48
Loss from discontinued operations	-	-	-	-
Net income	\$ 1.01	\$ 0.76	\$ 0.83	\$ 0.48
Market price range per share of common stock:				
High	\$ 74.74	\$ 74.21	\$ 68.15	\$ 61.80
Low	\$ 59.00	\$ 66.49	\$ 46.69	\$ 45.35
Close	\$ 70.65	\$ 69.02	\$ 50.31	\$ 45.86
Dividends paid per common share	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05	\$ 0.05

Note 24. Subsequent Events

In February 2017, the Company entered into the Second Amendment to the credit agreement to reprice the \$788 million floating rate tranche then outstanding. The Second Amendment extended the maturity for this tranche under the Term Facility February 14, 2024. After the Second Amendment, loans under the floating rate tranche of the Term Facility bear interest at a rate equal to an adjusted LIBOR rate (subject to a floor of 0.75%) plus an applicable margin equal to 2.25% per annum. The floating rate tranche of the Term Facility was issued at a 0.25% discount and has a 1% required amortization per year. The \$300 million fixed rate tranche remains unchanged.

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

The Board of Directors and Shareholders
Minerals Technologies Inc.:

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2016. In connection with our audits of the consolidated financial statements, we also have audited the related financial statement schedule. These consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedule are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedule based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2016, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. Also in our opinion, the related financial statement schedule, when considered in relation to the basic consolidated financial statements taken as a whole, present fairly, in all material respects, the information set forth therein.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies' internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2016, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO), and our report dated February 17, 2017 expressed an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

/s/ KPMG LLP

New York, New York
February 17, 2017

Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

The Board of Directors and Shareholders
Minerals Technologies, Inc.

We have audited Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies' internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2016, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO). Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies' management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

In our opinion, Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2016, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO).

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States), the consolidated balance sheets of Minerals Technologies Inc. and subsidiary companies as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, shareholder's equity, cash flows and related financial statement schedule for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2016, and our report dated February 17, 2017 expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements and financial statement schedule.

/s/ KPMG LLP

New York, New York
February 17, 2017

Management's Report On Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

Management of Minerals Technologies Inc. is responsible for the preparation, integrity and fair presentation of its published consolidated financial statements. The financial statements have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and, as such, include amounts based on judgments and estimates made by management. The Company also prepared the other information included in the annual report and is responsible for its accuracy and consistency with the consolidated financial statements.

Management is also responsible for establishing and maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting. The Company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that pertain to the Company's ability to record, process, summarize and report reliable financial data. The Company maintains a system of internal control over financial reporting, which is designed to provide reasonable assurance to the Company's management and board of directors regarding the preparation of reliable published financial statements and safeguarding of the Company's assets. The system includes a documented organizational structure and division of responsibility, established policies and procedures, including a code of conduct to foster a strong ethical climate, which are communicated throughout the Company, and the careful selection, training and development of our people.

The Board of Directors, acting through its Audit Committee, is responsible for the oversight of the Company's accounting policies, financial reporting and internal control. The Audit Committee of the Board of Directors is comprised entirely of outside directors who are independent of management. The Audit Committee is responsible for the appointment and compensation of the independent registered public accounting firm. It meets periodically with management, the independent registered public accounting firm and the internal auditors to ensure that they are carrying out their responsibilities. The Audit Committee is also responsible for performing an oversight role by reviewing and monitoring the financial, accounting and auditing procedures of the Company in addition to reviewing the Company's financial reports. The independent registered public accounting firm and the internal auditors have full and unlimited access to the Audit Committee, with or without management, to discuss the adequacy of internal control over financial reporting, and any other matters which they believe should be brought to the attention of the Audit Committee.

Management recognizes that there are inherent limitations in the effectiveness of any system of internal control over financial reporting, including the possibility of human error and the circumvention or overriding of internal control. Accordingly, even effective internal control over financial reporting can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to financial statement preparation and may not prevent or detect misstatements. Further, because of changes in conditions, the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting may vary over time.

The Company assessed its internal control system as of December 31, 2016 in relation to criteria for effective internal control over financial reporting described in "Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013)" issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. Based on its assessment, the Company has determined that, as of December 31, 2016, its system of internal control over financial reporting was effective.

The consolidated financial statements have been audited by the independent registered public accounting firm, which was given unrestricted access to all financial records and related data, including minutes of all meetings of stockholders, the Board of Directors and committees of the Board. Reports of the independent registered public accounting firm, which includes the independent registered public accounting firm's attestation of the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting are also presented within this document.

/s/ **Douglas T. Dietrich**
Chief Executive Officer

/s/ **Matthew E. Garth**
Senior Vice President, Finance and Treasury,
Chief Financial Officer

/s/ **Michael A. Cipolla**
Vice President, Corporate Controller
and Chief Accounting Officer

February 17, 2017

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. & SUBSIDIARY COMPANIES
SCHEDULE II-VALUATION AND QUALIFYING ACCOUNTS
(millions of dollars)

Description	<u>Balance at Beginning of Period</u>	<u>Additions Charged to Costs, Provisions and Expenses</u>	<u>Deductions (a)</u>	<u>Balance at End of Period</u>
Year ended December 31, 2016				
Valuation and qualifying accounts deducted from assets to which they apply:				
Allowance for doubtful accounts	\$ <u>4.4</u>	<u>6.2</u>	<u>(2.7)</u>	<u>7.9</u>
Year ended December 31, 2015				
Valuation and qualifying accounts deducted from assets to which they apply:				
Allowance for doubtful accounts	\$ <u>3.6</u>	<u>2.6</u>	<u>(1.8)</u>	<u>4.4</u>
Year ended December 31, 2014				
Valuation and qualifying accounts deducted from assets to which they apply:				
Allowance for doubtful accounts	\$ <u>1.7</u>	<u>\$ 2.4</u>	<u>(0.5)</u>	<u>3.6</u>

(a) Includes impact of translation of foreign currencies.

EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT

This Employment Agreement ("Agreement"), made as of [DATE] by and between Minerals Technologies Inc., 622 Third Avenue, New York, New York 10017-6707, a Delaware corporation (hereinafter referred to as "Employer"), and [NAME] (hereinafter referred to as "Executive").

WHEREAS, in furtherance of Employer's commitment to the continued success of its businesses, and in recognition of the valuable contributions to be made by Executive, Employer has agreed to [continue to]¹ employ Executive for a period commencing on [DATE] ("Commencement Date") and terminating on the expiration of the "Term" as hereinafter defined, subject to certain terms and conditions as hereinafter set forth, and Executive has indicated his willingness to accept such employment;

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual promises and covenants hereinafter set forth, the parties agree as follows:

1. (a) The employment of Executive by Employer hereunder will commence on the Commencement Date and, unless terminated on an earlier date in the manner hereinafter provided, shall terminate on the expiration of the Term. For purposes of this Agreement, "Term" shall mean a period beginning on the Commencement Date and ending on [DATE – 18 months after Commencement Date] subject to any extensions thereof as provided herein. On the first day of each month occurring after the Commencement Date, the Term shall automatically be extended for an additional month, but not beyond Executive's sixty-fifth birthday, unless, prior to any such first day of a month, the Employer or Executive shall have given written notice to the other party not to extend the Term. Nothing in this Section shall limit the right of the Employer or Executive to terminate Executive's employment hereunder pursuant to the terms and conditions set forth in Section 7. The Employer and Executive agree that neither such notice not to extend the Term by the Employer nor failure of this Agreement to be extended beyond Executive's sixty-fifth birthday shall be considered as a termination of Executive other than for Cause (as defined below) pursuant to Section 7(a) and shall not constitute Good Reason for Executive to terminate his employment hereunder pursuant to Section 7(b) (ii).

(b) During the Term, Executive will be employed by Employer as [TITLE] of Employer at an annual salary of not less than \$[] ("Base Salary") and will participate in all benefit plans and other fringe benefits available to similarly situated executives in accordance with their respective terms. Employer will review Executive's salary on an annual basis in accordance with Employer's policies, to determine appropriate increases, if any. In addition to salary, Executive will receive bonus payments as determined from time to time by Employer's Board of Directors or the Compensation Committee thereof. Any such payment with respect to a calendar year will be made in the first quarter of the following year but shall be deemed earned and due and owing if Executive is employed on December 31 of the applicable calendar year, regardless of his status as of the payment date.

¹ Current employees only

2. It is contemplated that, in connection with his employment hereunder, Executive may be required to incur reasonable and necessary travel, business entertainment and other business expenses. Employer agrees to reimburse Executive for all reasonable and necessary travel, business entertainment, and other business expenses incurred or expended by him incident to the performance of his duties hereunder, upon submission by Executive to Employer of vouchers or expense statements satisfactorily evidencing such expenses.

3. During the Term, Employer will provide retirement, employee benefits and fringe benefit plans to Executive no less favorable than those made available to Employer's executive employees generally, to the extent that Executive qualifies under the eligibility provisions of such plans. Executive shall be entitled to a period of paid vacation each year as provided in Employer's established vacation policy, but in no event shall such period be shorter than that agreed to between Employer and Executive under any prior agreement.

4. Executive agrees that he shall use his best efforts to promote and protect the interest of Employer, its subsidiaries and related corporations, and to devote his full working time, attention and energy to performing the duties of his position.

5. In the event of the "Permanent Disability" (as defined below) of Executive during the Term, Employer shall have the right, upon written notice to Executive, to terminate his employment hereunder, effective upon the giving of such notice. Upon such termination, Employer and Executive shall be discharged and released from any further obligations under this Agreement, except that the obligations provided for in Section 9 hereof shall survive any such termination. Disability benefits, if any, due under applicable plans and programs of the Employer shall be determined under the provisions of such plans and programs. For purposes of this Section 5, "Permanent Disability" means any physical or mental disability or incapacity which permanently renders Executive incapable of performing the services required of him by Employer.

6. In the event of the death of Executive during the Term, the salary to which Executive is entitled hereunder shall continue to be paid through the end of the month in which death occurs, to the last beneficiary designated by Executive by written notice to Employer, or, failing such designation, to his estate. Executive's designated beneficiary or personal representative, as the case may be, shall accept the payments provided for in this Section 6 in full discharge and release of Employer of and from any further obligations under this Agreement. Any other benefits due under applicable plans and programs of Employer shall be determined under the provisions of such plans and programs.

7. (a) Employer or Executive may terminate Executive's employment with Employer under this Agreement at any time by providing the other party with advance written notice, in which case Executive's employment shall terminate at the time stated on such notice. In the event during the Term Employer terminates the employment of Executive for reasons other than for Cause or the Permanent Disability or death of Executive or Executive resigns for Good Reason (as defined below), then within 90 days of Executive's separation from service with Employer, Employer will pay Executive a lump sum amount equal to 18 months of Base Salary. In addition, Employer shall pay Executive any "Termination Bonuses," as defined herein, in the first calendar quarter of the year following the performance year to which the Termination Bonus relates. For purposes of this Agreement, "Termination Bonuses" shall mean amounts which would otherwise be payable to Executive pursuant to Section 1(b) were Executive an employee of Employer through the date of Executive's termination of employment and for 18 months thereafter, prorated for the year in which the 18 months after termination of employment ends, provided that in no event will any such bonus be greater in amount than the average amount of any such bonuses received by Executive in the two years immediately preceding the termination of his employment with Employer, or the amount of such bonus received by Executive in the prior year if Executive has received only one such bonus payment.

In addition to the foregoing payments, Executive shall be entitled to coverage, at Executive's expense, under Employer's Group Benefit Plan for medical and dental expense coverage and prescription drugs for 18 months following termination of employment. Employer shall pay to Executive a lump sum payment within 90 days of Executive's separation from service equal to 1.5 times the cost of such coverage for 18 months at the level and type in effect for Executive upon his separation from service.

[Notwithstanding the foregoing, if Employer terminates the employment of Executive or Executive resigns for any reason during the first twelve months of the Term, Executive shall not be entitled to the payments and coverage provided under this Section 7(a), but shall instead be entitled only to the payments provided under Section 8.]² In addition, if Executive becomes entitled to receive payments upon a termination of employment pursuant to his letter agreement with Employer regarding severance payments following a change in control, Executive shall not be entitled to the payments and coverage provided under this Section 7(a).

² New employees only

As a condition of receiving any severance payments under this Section 7(a), Executive shall first sign a General Release of all claims, in the form attached hereto as Attachment "A." The General Release must be signed no later than 30 days following Executive's separation from service.

Further notwithstanding the foregoing, if Executive is a "specified employee" (within the meaning of Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations thereunder ("Section 409A") and using the methodology established by Employer's Board of Directors or its delegate) and any payment described in this Section 7(a) is subject to Section 409A, then any such payment that would otherwise be made in the six months following Executive's separation from service shall be made upon the six-month anniversary of such separation from service. For purposes of this Section 7(a), "separation from service" shall mean a separation from service, within the meaning of Section 409A, with Employer and all other entities treated as a single employer with Employer under Section 409A. If the 30 day period for signing the General Release required under this Section 7(a) begins in one calendar year and ends in another, then any severance payments under this Section 7(a) that are subject to Section 409A shall be made in the later calendar year.

(b) For purposes of this Agreement:

(i) "Cause" shall be limited to the following:

(A) Executive shall have failed to perform any of his material obligations as set forth herein, provided that Employer has advised Executive of such failure and given Executive a reasonable period of time to cure such failure and Executive has failed to do so; or

(B) Executive shall commit acts constituting (i) a felony involving moral turpitude materially adversely reflecting on the Employer or (ii) fraud or theft against Employer.

(ii) "Good Reason" shall mean termination at the election of Executive based on any of the following that occur without the written consent of Executive:

(A) The assignment to Executive of any duties materially inconsistent with the status of [TITLE] of Employer, Executive's removal from that position, or a substantial diminution in the nature or status of Executive's responsibilities;

(B) A material reduction by Employer in Executive's Base Salary as the same may be increased from time to time;

(C) A material reduction of Executive's fringe or retirement benefits that is not applied by Employer to executives generally;

(D) the relocation of the executive office in which Executive is located as of the date of this Agreement to a location more than fifty miles therefrom and more than 100 miles from Employer's principal corporate office (except for required travel on the business of Employer to an extent substantially consistent with Executive's present business travel obligations); or

(E) the failure of Employer to obtain a reasonably satisfactory agreement from any successor (by merger, consolidation, purchase of all or substantially all of Employer's assets, or otherwise) to assume and agree to perform this Agreement.

An event shall not constitute Good Reason unless (I) Executive gives notice of the Good Reason event within 60 days of the initial existence of the event, (II) Employer fails to cure the Good Reason event within 30 days of the event, and (III) Executive terminates employment within 90 days of the event.

8. Employer shall have the right to terminate this Agreement immediately with no further liability under its terms if Executive terminates his employment without Good Reason, or if Executive is discharged by Employer for Cause. In such event, Executive shall be entitled only to receive his earned Base Salary through the date of termination and to receive any bonus payment to which he may be entitled pursuant to Section 1(a). It is agreed that the provisions of Section 9 shall survive any such termination of this Agreement.

9. (a) Executive agrees that during the term of his employment hereunder and during the further period of two (2) years after the termination of such employment for whatever reason, Executive shall not, without the prior written approval of Employer, directly or indirectly through any other person, firm or corporation, (i) engage or participate in or become employed by or render advisory or other services to or for any person, firm or corporation, or in connection with any business enterprise, which is, directly or indirectly, in competition with any of the business operations or activities of Employer, or (ii) solicit, raid, entice or induce any such person who on the date of termination of employment of Executive is, or within the last six (6) months of Executive's employment by Employer was, an employee of Employer, to become employed by any person, firm or corporation which is, directly or indirectly, in competition with any of the business operations or activities of Employer, and Executive shall not approach any such employee or former employee for such purpose or authorize or knowingly approve the taking of such actions by any other person. The foregoing restrictions shall apply to the geographical areas where Employer does business and/or did business during the term of Executive's employment and all places where, at the date of termination of employment of Executive, Employer had plans or reasonable expectations to do business; provided that if any Court construes any portion of this provision or clause of this Agreement, or any portion thereof, to be illegal, void or unenforceable because of the duration of such provision or the area or matter covered thereby, such Court shall reduce the duration, area, or matter of such provision and, in its reduced form, such provision shall then be enforceable and shall be enforced.

(b) Recognizing that the knowledge, information and relationship with customers, suppliers, and agents, and the knowledge of Employer's and its subsidiary companies' business methods, systems, plans and policies which Executive shall hereafter establish, receive or obtain as an employee of Employer or its subsidiary companies, are valuable and unique assets of the respective businesses of Employer and its subsidiary companies, Executive agrees that, during and after the term of his employment hereunder, he shall not (otherwise than pursuant to his duties hereunder) disclose, without the prior written approval of Employer, any such knowledge or information pertaining to Employer or any of its subsidiary companies, their business, personnel or policies, to any person, firm, corporation or other entity, for any reason or purpose whatsoever. The provisions of this Section 9(b) shall not apply to information which is or shall become generally known to the public or the trade (other than by reason of Executive's breach of his obligations hereunder), information which is or shall become available in trade or other publications, and information which Executive is required to disclose by law or an order of a court of competent jurisdiction. If Executive is required by law or a court order to disclose such information, he shall notify Employer of such requirement and provide Employer an opportunity (if Employer so elects) to contest such law or court order.

(c) Executive agrees that any incentive compensation (including bonuses, stock options, and other forms of incentive compensation) paid to Executive by Employer, whether pursuant to this Agreement or otherwise, shall be subject to the repayment requirements of Employer's Policy for Recoupment of Incentive Compensation, as in effect from time to time ("Recoupment Policy"), and/or the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act ("Dodd-Frank Act"). Executive further agrees that this Agreement may be amended to the extent required by the Recoupment Policy or under the Dodd-Frank Act to provide for such repayment.

(d) Executive agrees to cooperate with Employer, both during and after termination of employment, in connection with any litigation or other proceeding arising out of or relating to matters in which Executive was involved while employed by Employer. Executive's cooperation shall include, without limitation, providing assistance to Employer's counsel, experts and consultants, and providing truthful testimony in pretrial and trial or hearing proceedings. In the event that Executive's cooperation is requested after the termination of Executive's employment, Employer will (i) seek to minimize interruptions to Executive's schedule to the extent consistent with its interests in the matter; and (ii) reimburse Executive for all reasonable and appropriate out-of-pocket expenses actually incurred by Executive in connection with such cooperation upon reasonable substantiation of such expenses.

10. Executive agrees that Employer shall withhold from any and all payments required to be made to Executive pursuant to this Agreement, all federal, state, local and/or other taxes which Employer determines are required to be withheld in accordance with applicable statutes and/or regulations from time to time in effect. Executive and Employer intend that this Agreement shall comply with Section 409A to the extent any payments hereunder are subject to Section 409A.

11. Executive shall not during the Term or at any time thereafter engage in any conduct, or make any statements or representations, that disparage, demean, or impugn Employer or its subsidiaries or affiliates, or any of their respective directors, officers, employees or consultants, including without limitation any statements impugning the personal or professional character of any such director, officer, employee or consultant. Employer shall not authorize any conduct, or any statements or representations, that disparage, demean, or impugn Executive, including without limitation any statements impugning the personal or professional character of Executive.

12. This Agreement shall be construed under the laws of the State of New York.

13. This Agreement supersedes all prior negotiations and understandings of any kind with respect to the subject matter hereof [and shall supersede your existing employment agreement dated [DATE], as amended from time to time]³. This Agreement contains all of the terms and provision of agreement between the parties hereto with respect to the subject matter hereof. Any representation, promise or condition, whether written or oral, not specifically incorporated herein, shall be of no binding effect upon the parties.

14. (a) If any portion of this Agreement is held invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, that portion only shall be deemed deleted as though it had never been included herein but the remainder of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect.

(b) Executive acknowledges and agrees that Employer's remedies at law for a breach or threatened breach of any of the provisions of Section 9 would be inadequate and, in recognition of this fact, Executive agrees that, in the event of such a breach or threatened breach, in addition to any remedies at law, Employer, without posting any bond, shall be entitled to obtain equitable relief in the form of specific performance, temporary restraining order, temporary or permanent injunction or any other equitable remedy which may then be available.

³ Current employees with employment agreements only

(c) This Agreement shall not be assignable by Executive.

15. No modification, termination or waiver of any provision of this Agreement shall be valid unless it is in writing and signed by both parties hereto.

16. Employer represents that it has all requisite power and authority to execute and deliver this Agreement and to perform its obligations under this Agreement, and that this Agreement is enforceable against it in accordance with its terms.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC.

By: _____

Name:

Title:

Agreed to by:

Executive

ATTACHMENT "A"

GENERAL RELEASE

1. I, _____, for and in consideration of certain payments to be made and benefits to be provided to me under the terms of an Employment Agreement (the "Agreement") to which this General Release is attached with Minerals Technologies Inc. ("Company"), and for other good and valuable consideration, do hereby REMISE, RELEASE, AND FOREVER DISCHARGE Company and each of its parents, subsidiaries and affiliates; and all of their respective past, present, and future officers, directors, shareholders, partners, employees, counsel, auditors, agents, and insurers, acting in any capacity whatsoever, and all of their respective successors, assigns, heirs, executors, and administrators, and all other persons or entities who/that might be claimed to be jointly or severally liable with them (hereinafter collectively referred to as "Released Parties") of and from all claims, causes of action, suits, charges, debts, dues, sums of money, attorneys' fees and costs, accounts, bills, covenants, contracts, agreements, expenses, wages, compensation, benefits, promises, damages, judgments, rights, demands, or otherwise (hereinafter collectively referred to as "Claims"), known or unknown, accrued or unaccrued, contingent or non-contingent, in equity or in law, which I ever had, now have, or hereafter may have, or which my heirs, executors, or administrators may have, by reason of any matter, cause or thing whatsoever from the beginning of time up through and including the date of my signature on this General Release. This General Release includes, but is not limited to, all Claims (i) in any way arising from, relating to, or concerning my employment or consulting with and/or the termination of my employment or consulting with Company or any other Released Parties; (ii) in any way arising from or under, or relating to my Employment Agreement with Company; (iii) for discrimination based upon sex, race, disability, national origin, religion, or any other protected characteristic including without limitation all Claims arising under Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, the Age Discrimination in Employment Act ("ADEA"), the Americans With Disabilities Act, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act, the Civil Rights Act of 1866, and all other federal, state, and local employment discrimination statutes; and (iv) for breach of contract or for the commission of any torts, including without limitation Claims for defamation, wrongful discharge, whistleblowing or any other torts; provided, however, that this General Release shall not apply to any compensation or benefits to which I am entitled under the terms of the Agreement.

2. I further represent that I have not, and agree and covenant that neither I, nor any person, organization or other entity on my behalf, shall file any suit (or join any suit or accept any relief in any suit) with respect to any Claims which have been released under this General Release. If I breach this covenant, I agree to pay the reasonable legal fees, costs, and expenses incurred by any of the Released Parties in defending any Claims found to be barred by this General Release. (This covenant not to sue shall not apply to any Claims under the ADEA.)

3. I hereby agree and recognize that my employment and/or consulting by Company was permanently and irrevocably terminated and Company and other Released Parties have no obligation, contractual or otherwise to me to hire or rehire or re-engage me as a consultant or otherwise in the future, and I hereby agree to release Company and other Released Parties from all liabilities based upon any denial of employment, reemployment, or future engagement.

4. I hereby agree and acknowledge that the payments provided by Company under the Agreement are to bring about an amicable resolution of my employment and/or consulting arrangement and are not to be construed as an admission of fault or wrongdoing, or of any duty owed by Company.

5. I hereby acknowledge that I have been advised by Company that I should consult with an attorney before signing this General Release. I understand that I have a period of up to 21 days from Company's request that I sign this General Release within which to consider whether to sign it. I further understand that, if I do sign this General Release, I will have an additional 7 day period thereafter within which I may revoke my signature by providing written notice to Company. However, I will not receive any salary or benefit continuation payments under Section 7 of the Agreement until I return to Company an executed General Release, and until after the revocation period has expired without my having revoked my signature.

6. I hereby certify that I have read the terms of this General Release, and that I understand its terms and effects. I acknowledge, further, that I am executing this General Release of my own free volition and with the intention of releasing all claims recited herein in exchange for the consideration described in the Agreement, which I acknowledge is adequate and satisfactory to me. None of the Released Parties, or their agents, representatives, or attorneys, have made any representations to me concerning the terms or effects of this General Release other than those contained herein.

Intending to be legally bound hereby, I execute the foregoing General Release this ____ day of _____ 20__.

Witness

[Employee Name]

[MTI Letterhead]

[DATE]

[NAME]

[TITLE]

Minerals Technologies Inc.
622 Third Avenue
New York, New York 10017-6707

Dear [NAME]:

Minerals Technologies Inc. (the "Company") considers it essential to the best interests of its stockholders to foster the continuous employment of key management personnel. In this connection, should the Company receive a proposal from a third party, whether solicited by the Company or unsolicited, concerning a possible business combination with, or the acquisition of a substantial share of the equity or voting securities of, the Company, the Board of Directors of the Company (the "Board") has determined that it is imperative that it and the Company be able to rely upon your continued services without concern that you might be distracted by the personal uncertainties and risks that such a proposal might otherwise entail.

Accordingly, the Board has determined that appropriate steps should be taken to reinforce and encourage the continued attention and dedication of members of the Company's management, yourself included, to their assigned duties without distraction in the face of potentially disturbing circumstances that could arise out of a proposal for a change in control of the Company. The Board has also determined that it is in the best interests of the Company and its stockholders to ensure your continued availability to the Company and its subsidiaries in the event of a "potential change in control" (as defined in Section 2 hereof).

In order to induce you to remain in the employ of the Company and its subsidiaries and in consideration of your agreement set forth in Section 2(ii) hereof, the Company agrees that you shall receive the severance benefits set forth in this letter agreement ("Agreement") in the event your employment with the Company and its subsidiaries is terminated subsequent to a Change in Control (as defined in Section 2 hereof) under the circumstances described below.

1. Term of Agreement. This Agreement shall commence as of [DATE]¹, and shall continue in effect through December 31, [YEAR]²; provided, however, the term of this Agreement shall automatically be extended for one additional year commencing on January 1, [FOLLOWING YEAR] and each January 1 thereafter, unless, not later than June 30 of the preceding year, the Company shall have given notice that it does not wish to extend this Agreement; provided, further, that, notwithstanding any such notice by the Company not to extend, if a Change in Control shall have occurred during the original or any extended term of this Agreement, this Agreement shall continue in effect for a period of forty-eight (48) months beyond the expiration of the term in effect immediately before such Change in Control.

2. Change in Control. (i) No benefits shall be payable hereunder unless there shall have been a Change in Control of the Company, as set forth below. For purposes of this Agreement, a "Change in Control" of the Company shall mean a change in control of a nature that would be required to be reported in response to Item 6(e) of Schedule 14A of Regulation 14A promulgated under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), whether or not the Company is then subject to such reporting requirement; provided that, without limitation, such a Change in Control shall be deemed to have occurred if (A) any "person" (as such term is used in Sections 13(d) and 14(d) of the Exchange Act) is or becomes the "beneficial owner" (as determined for purpose of Regulation 13D-G under the Exchange Act as currently in effect), directly or indirectly, of securities of the Company representing 30% or more of the combined voting power of the Company's then outstanding securities; or (B) during any period of two consecutive years (not including any period prior to the execution of this Agreement), individuals who at the beginning of such period constitute the Board and any new director, whose election to the Board or nomination for election to the Board by the Company's stockholders was approved by a vote of at least two-thirds (2/3) of the directors then still in office who either were directors at the beginning of the period or whose election or nomination for election was previously so approved, cease for any reason to constitute a majority of the Board; or (C) the Company consummates a merger or consolidation of the Company with any other corporation, other than a merger or consolidation which would result in the holders of the voting securities of the Company outstanding immediately prior thereto holding immediately thereafter securities representing more than 80% of the combined voting power of the voting securities of the Company or such surviving entity outstanding immediately after such merger or consolidation; or (D) the Company consummates a plan of complete liquidation of the Company or an agreement for the sale or disposition by the Company of all or substantially all of the Company's assets.

¹ Commencement Date, or if existing employee date of agreement
² Current year, or if signed after June 30, subsequent year

(ii) You agree that, subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, in the event of a potential change in control of the Company occurring after the date hereof, you will not voluntarily terminate your employment with the Company and its subsidiaries for a period of six (6) months from the occurrence of such potential change in control of the Company. If more than one potential change in control occurs during the term of this Agreement, the provisions of the preceding sentence shall be applicable to each potential change in control occurring prior to the occurrence of a Change in Control. For purposes of this Agreement, a "potential change in control of the Company" shall be deemed to have occurred if (A) the Company enters into an agreement, the consummation of which would result in the occurrence of a Change in Control; (B) any person (including the Company) publicly announces an intention to take or to consider taking actions which if consummated would constitute a Change in Control; (C) any person becomes the beneficial owner, directly or indirectly, of securities of the Company representing 9.5% or more of the combined voting power of the Company's then outstanding securities; or (D) the Board adopts a resolution to the effect that, for purposes of this Agreement, a potential change in control of the Company has occurred.

3. Termination Following Change in Control. If any of the events described in Section 2(i) hereof constituting a Change in Control shall have occurred, you shall be entitled to the benefits provided in Section 4(iv) hereof upon the subsequent termination of your employment with the Company and its subsidiaries during the term of this Agreement unless such termination is (A) a result of your death, (B) a result of your Retirement for other than Good Reason, (C) your termination for other than Good Reason, or (D) your being terminated by the Company or any of its subsidiaries for Disability or for Cause.

(i) Disability; Retirement. For purposes of this Agreement, "Disability" shall mean permanent and total disability as such term is defined under Section 22(e)(3) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "Code"). Any question as to the existence of your Disability upon which you and the Company cannot agree shall be determined by a qualified independent physician selected by you (or, if you are unable to make such selection, such selection shall be made by any adult member of your immediate family or your legal representative), and approved by the Company, said approval not to be unreasonably withheld. The determination of such physician made in writing to the Company and to you shall be final and conclusive for all purposes of this Agreement. For purposes of this Agreement, "Retirement" shall mean your voluntary termination of employment with the Company in accordance with the Company's retirement policy (excluding early retirement) generally applicable to its salaried employees or in accordance with any retirement arrangement established with your consent with respect to you.

(ii) Cause. For purposes of this Agreement, "Cause" shall mean your willful breach of duty in the course of your employment, or your habitual neglect of your employment duties. For purposes of this Section 3(ii), no act, or failure to act, on your part shall be deemed "willful" unless done, or omitted to be done, by you not in good faith and without reasonable belief that your action or omission was in the best interest of the Company and its subsidiaries. Notwithstanding the foregoing, you shall not be deemed to have been terminated for Cause unless and until there shall have been delivered to you a copy of a resolution duly adopted by the affirmative vote of not less than three-quarters (3/4) of the entire membership of the Board at a meeting of the Board called and held for such purpose (after reasonable notice to you and an opportunity for you, together with your counsel, to be heard before the Board), finding that in the good faith opinion of the Board you were guilty of conduct set forth above in this Section 3(ii) and specifying the particulars thereof in detail.

(iii) Good Reason. You shall be entitled to terminate your employment for Good Reason within 90 days of the event giving rise to the Good Reason. For the purpose of this Agreement, "Good Reason" shall mean the occurrence, without your express written consent, of any of the following circumstances unless such circumstances are fully corrected prior to the Date of Termination (as defined in Section 3(v)) specified in the Notice of Termination (as defined in Section 3(iv)) given in respect thereof:

(A) the assignment to you of any duties materially inconsistent with your status as [TITLE] of Minerals Technologies Inc., your removal from that position, or a substantial diminution in the nature or status of your responsibilities from those in effect immediately prior to the Change in Control;

(B) a material reduction by the Company or any of its subsidiaries in your annual base salary or bonus as in effect on the date hereof or as the same may be increased from time to time;

(C) the relocation of the executive office in which you are located prior to the Change in Control to a location more than fifty miles therefrom or the Company or any of its subsidiaries requiring you to be based anywhere other than the executive office in which you are located prior to the Change in Control except for required travel on the business of the Company and its subsidiaries to an extent substantially consistent with your present business travel obligations;

(D) the failure by the Company or any of its subsidiaries to continue in effect any incentive compensation plan in which you participate prior to the Change in Control, unless an equitable alternative compensation arrangement (embodied in an ongoing substitute or alternative plan) has been provided for you, or the failure by the Company or any of its subsidiaries to continue your participation in any such incentive plan on materially the same basis, both in terms of the amount of benefits provided and the level of your participation relative to other participants, as existed at the time of the Change in Control;

(F) except as required by law, the failure by the Company or any of its subsidiaries to continue to provide you with benefits at least as favorable as those enjoyed by you under the employee benefit and welfare plans of the Company and its subsidiaries, including, without limitation, the pension, life insurance, medical, dental, health and accident, disability, deferred compensation retirement and savings plans, in which you were participating at the time of the Change in Control, the taking of any action by the Company or any of its subsidiaries which would directly or indirectly materially reduce any of such benefits or deprive you of any material fringe benefit enjoyed by you at the time of the Change in Control, or the failure by the Company or any of its subsidiaries to provide you with the number of paid vacation days to which you are entitled at the time of the Change in Control; or

(G) the failure of the Company to obtain a satisfactory agreement from any successor to assume and agree to perform this Agreement, as contemplated in Section 5 hereof.

Your continued employment shall not constitute consent to, or a waiver of rights with respect to, any circumstance constituting Good Reason hereunder.

(iv) Notice of Termination. Any purported termination of your employment by the Company and its subsidiaries or by you shall be communicated by written Notice of Termination to the other party hereto in accordance with Section 6 hereof. For purposes of this Agreement, a "Notice of Termination" shall mean a notice which shall indicate the specific termination provision in this Agreement relied upon and shall set forth in reasonable detail the facts and circumstances claimed to provide a basis for termination of your employment under the provision so indicated.

(v) Date of Termination, Etc. "Date of Termination" shall mean (A) if your employment is terminated for Disability, thirty (30) days after Notice of Termination is given (provided that you shall not have returned to the full-time performance of your duties during such thirty (30) day period), and (B) if your employment is terminated pursuant to Section 3(ii) or (iii) above or for any other reason (other than Disability), the date specified in the Notice of Termination (which, in the case of a termination pursuant to Section 3(ii) above shall not be less than thirty (30) days, and in the case of a termination pursuant to Section 3(iii) above shall not be less than thirty (30) nor more than sixty (60) days, respectively, from the date such Notice of Termination is given); provided that, if within thirty (30) days after any Notice of Termination is given the party receiving such Notice of Termination notifies the other party that a dispute exists concerning the grounds for termination, the Date of Termination shall be the date on which the dispute is finally determined, either by mutual written agreement of the parties, by a binding arbitration award or by a final judgment, order or decree of a court of competent jurisdiction (which is not appealable or the time for appeal therefrom having expired and no appeal having been perfected); provided further that the Date of Termination shall be extended by a notice of dispute only if such notice is given in good faith and the party giving such notice pursues the resolution of such dispute with reasonable diligence. Notwithstanding the pendency of any such dispute, the Company and its subsidiaries will continue to pay you your full compensation in effect when the notice giving rise to the dispute was given (including, but not limited to, monthly payments of base salary and bonus paid in the first quarter of the calendar year following the performance year) and continue you as a participant in all incentive compensation, benefit and insurance plans in which you were participating when the notice giving rise to the dispute was given (other than the Savings and Investment Plan and the Supplemental Savings and Investment Plan), until the dispute is finally resolved in accordance with this Section 3(v).

4. Compensation Upon Termination or During Disability. Following a Change in Control of the Company, as defined by Section 2(i), upon termination of your employment or during a period of Disability you shall be entitled to the following benefits, provided that such period of Disability or Date of Termination occurs during the term of this Agreement:

(i) During any period that you fail to perform your full-time duties with the Company and its subsidiaries as a result of your Disability, you shall continue to receive an amount equal to your base salary and bonus at the rate in effect at the commencement of any such period through the Date of Termination for Disability. Thereafter, your benefits shall be determined in accordance with the insurance programs of the Company and its subsidiaries then in effect.

(ii) If your employment shall be terminated by the Company or any of its subsidiaries for Cause or by you other than for Good Reason, the Company (or one of its subsidiaries, if applicable) shall pay you your full base salary and bonus through the Date of Termination at the rate in effect at the time Notice of Termination is given and shall pay any amounts to be paid to you pursuant to any other compensation plans, programs or employment agreements then in effect, and the Company shall have no further obligations to you under this Agreement.

(iii) If your employment shall be terminated by reason of your death or Retirement, your benefits shall be determined in accordance with the retirement and insurance programs of the Company and its subsidiaries then in effect.

(iv) If your employment by the Company and its subsidiaries shall be terminated by (a) the Company and its subsidiaries other than for Cause, your death, Retirement, or Disability or (b) by you for Good Reason, then you shall be entitled to the benefits provided below:

(A) The Company (or one of its subsidiaries, if applicable) shall pay you your full base salary and bonus through the Date of Termination at the rate in effect at the time the Notice of Termination is given, no later than the fifth day following the Date of Termination, plus all other amounts to which you are entitled under any compensation plan of the Company applicable to you, at the time such payments are due.

(B) The Company shall pay as severance pay to you a severance payment (the "Unadjusted Severance Payment") equal to 3 times the sum of (1) the greater of your base salary in effect immediately prior to the Change in Control or your base salary in effect immediately prior to your Date of Termination and (2) the greater of your target cash annual incentive compensation immediately prior to the Change in Control or your target cash annual incentive compensation immediately prior to your Date of Termination.

(C) The Unadjusted Severance Payment shall not be reduced by the amount of any other payment or the value of any benefit received or to be received by you in connection with your termination of employment or contingent upon a Change in Control of the Company (whether payable pursuant to the terms of this Agreement or any other agreement, plan or arrangement with the Company or an Affiliate, predecessor or successor of the Company or any person whose actions result in a Change in Control of the Company or an Affiliate of such person) unless (1) in the opinion of tax counsel selected by the Company's Vice President-General Counsel and reasonably acceptable to you, such other payment or benefit constitutes a "parachute payment" within the meaning of Section 280G(b)(2) of the Code, and (2) in the opinion of such tax counsel, the Unadjusted Severance Payment plus all other payments or benefits which constitute "parachute payments" within the meaning of Section 280G(b)(2) of the Code would result in a portion of the Unadjusted Severance Payment being subject to the excise tax under Section 4999 of the Code. In such event, the amount of the Unadjusted Severance Payment shall be reduced by the minimum amount necessary such that no portion thereof will be subject to the excise tax under Section 4999 of the Code. The Unadjusted Severance Payment, as reduced, if at all, pursuant to the provisions of this paragraph shall be referred to as the Adjusted Severance Payment. In determining whether the Unadjusted Severance Payment shall be reduced under this paragraph, (i) there shall not be included in the computation any payment if you shall have effectively waived your receipt or enjoyment of such payment or benefit, and (ii) the value of any non-cash benefit or any deferred cash payment shall be determined by the Company's independent auditors in accordance with the principles of Sections 280G(d)(3) and (4) of the Code.

(D) Except to the extent that the payment thereof would subject any payment hereunder to the excise tax under Section 4999 of the Code:

(1) The Company shall also pay to you all legal fees and expenses reasonably incurred by you in connection with this Agreement (including all such fees and expenses, if any, incurred in contesting or disputing the nature of any such termination for purposes of this Agreement or in seeking to obtain or enforce any right or benefit provided by this Agreement), provided that any such fees and expenses shall be paid no later than the end of the calendar year following the calendar year in which they are incurred

(2) All of your outstanding Performance Unit awards under the Company's Long-Term Incentive Plan ("LTIP Awards") shall become fully vested and nonforfeitable, and, to the extent that your Date of Termination occurs prior to the end of the performance period relating to such LTIP Awards, you shall remain entitled to a payout on such LTIP Awards upon completion of the performance period based on actual performance results for the entire performance period, provided that this paragraph shall apply only to the extent permitted by the plan documents and award agreements relating to such LTIP Awards; and

(3) The Company shall pay to you a lump sum amount within 90 days of your separation from service equal to 1.5 times the cost for twenty-four (24) months of life, disability, accident and health insurance benefits at the level and type in effect for you upon your separation from service. This Agreement in no way diminishes any rights to those benefits to which you would be entitled if you were to retire as an employee of Minerals Technologies Inc.

(E) If it is established pursuant to a final determination of a court or an Internal Revenue Service proceeding that, notwithstanding the good faith of you and the Company in applying the terms of this Section 4(iv), the aggregate "parachute payments" paid to or for your benefit are in an amount that would result in any portion of such "parachute payments" being subject to the excise tax under Section 4999 of the Code, then you shall have an obligation to pay the Company upon demand an amount equal to the sum of (1) the excess of the aggregate "parachute payments" paid to or for your benefit over the aggregate "parachute payments" that would have been paid to or for your benefit without any portion of such "parachute payments" being subject to the excise tax under Section 4999 of the Code; and (2) interest on the amount set forth in clause (1) of this sentence at the applicable Federal rate (as defined in Section 1274(d) of the Code) from the date of your receipt of such excess until the date of such payment; provided, however, that in the event and to the extent that an excise tax is nevertheless imposed on said amount your obligation to pay said amount to the Company is hereby waived.

(F) You shall not be required to mitigate the amount of any payment provided for in this Section 4 by seeking other employment or otherwise, nor shall the amount of any payment or benefit provided for in this Section 4 be reduced by any compensation earned by you as the result of employment by another employer or by retirement benefits received after the Date of Termination or otherwise, except as specifically provided in this Section 4.

(G) The Company shall pay you the Unadjusted Severance Payment in a lump sum upon your separation from service and no later than the fifth day following the Date of Termination; provided, however, that if the Company in good faith believes that the Unadjusted Severance Payment shall be reduced under the provisions of Section 4(iv)(C) hereof, the Company shall pay to you at such time a good faith estimate of the Adjusted Severance Payment (the "Estimated Adjusted Severance Payment," the computation of which shall be given to you in writing together with a written explanation of the basis for making such adjustment) which amount shall in no event be less than 50% of the Unadjusted Severance Payment. The Company shall, within 60 days of the Date of Termination, either pay to you the balance of the Unadjusted Severance Payment together with interest thereon at the applicable Federal rate (as defined in Section 1274(d) of the Code) or deliver to you a copy of the opinion of the tax counsel referred to in Section 4(iv)(C) hereof establishing the amount of the Adjusted Severance Payment. If the Adjusted Severance Payment exceeds the Estimated Adjusted Severance Payment, the difference shall be paid to you at such time together with interest thereon at the applicable Federal rate (as defined in Section 1274(d) of the Code).

(H) Notwithstanding the foregoing, if you are a "specified employee" (within the meaning of Section 409A of the Internal Revenue Code and the regulations thereunder ("Section 409A")) using the methodology specified by the Company's Board of Directors or its delegate) and any payment described in Section 4(iv)(G) is subject to Section 409A, then any such payment that would otherwise be made in the six months following your separation from service shall be made upon the six-month anniversary of such separation from service. For purposes of this Section 4, "separation from service" shall mean a separation from service, within the meaning of Section 409A, with the Company and all other entities treated as a single employer with the Company under Section 409A. To the extent that any payment under this Agreement is subject to the six month delay described in this paragraph, the Company shall contribute such amount to the rabbi trust associated with the Company's deferred compensation plan, and such amount shall be distributed from the rabbi trust at the end of such six month delay period.

5. Successors; Binding Agreement.

(i) The Company will require any successor (whether direct or indirect, by purchase, merger, consolidation or otherwise) to all or substantially all of the business and/or assets of the Company to expressly assume and agree to perform this Agreement in the same manner and to the same extent that the Company is required to perform it. Failure of the Company to obtain such assumption and agreement prior to the effectiveness of any such succession shall be a breach of this Agreement and shall entitle you to compensation from the Company in the same amount and on the same terms as you would be entitled hereunder if you had terminated your employment for Good Reason following a Change in Control, except that for purposes of implementing the foregoing, the date on which any such succession becomes effective shall be deemed the Date of Termination. As used in this Agreement, "Company" shall mean the Company as hereinbefore defined and any successor to its business and/or assets as aforesaid which assumes and agrees to perform this Agreement by operation of law, or otherwise.

(ii) This Agreement shall inure to the benefit of and be enforceable by your personal or legal representatives, executors, administrators, successors, heirs, distributees, devisees and legatees. If you should die while any amount would still be payable to you hereunder if you had continued to live, all such amounts, unless otherwise provided herein, shall be paid in accordance with the terms of this Agreement to your devisee, legatee or other designee or, if there is no such designee, to your estate.

6. Notice. For the purpose of this Agreement, notices and all other communications provided for in this Agreement shall be in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly given when delivered or mailed by United States registered mail, return receipt requested, postage prepaid, addressed to the respective addresses set forth on the first page of this Agreement, provided that all notices to the Company shall be directed to the attention of the Office of the Vice President-General Counsel of the Company, or to such other address as either party may have furnished to the other in writing in accordance herewith, except that notice of change of address shall be effective only upon receipt.

7. Miscellaneous. No provision of this Agreement may be modified, waived or discharged unless such waiver, modification or discharge is agreed to in writing and signed by you and such officer as may be specifically designated by the Board. No waiver by either party hereto at any time of any breach by the other party hereto of, or compliance with, any conditions or provision of this Agreement to be performed by such other party shall be deemed a waiver of similar or dissimilar provisions or conditions at the same or at any prior or subsequent time. No agreements or representations, oral or otherwise, express or implied, with respect to the subject matter hereof have been made by either party which are not expressly set forth in this Agreement. The validity, interpretation, construction and performance of this Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of New York, including Section 198 (1-a) of the New York Labor Law. All references to sections of the Code shall be deemed also to refer to any successor provisions to such sections. Any payments provided for hereunder shall be paid net of any applicable withholding required under federal, state or local law. The obligations of the Company under Section 4 shall survive the expiration of the term of this Agreement. The parties intend that this Agreement shall comply with Section 409A to the extent any payments hereunder are subject to Section 409A. This Agreement supersedes all prior negotiations and understandings of any kind with respect to the subject matter hereof [and shall supersede your existing severance agreement executed [DATE]]³.

8. Validity. The invalidity or unenforceability of any provision of this Agreement shall not affect the validity or enforceability of any other provision of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect.

9. Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in several counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original but all of which together will constitute one and the same instrument.

10. Arbitration. Any dispute or controversy arising under or in connection with this Agreement shall be settled exclusively by arbitration in accordance with the rules of the American Arbitration Association then in effect. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator's award in any court having jurisdiction; provided, however, that you shall be entitled to seek specific performance of your right to be paid until the Date of Termination during the pendency of any dispute or controversy arising under or in connection with this Agreement.

³ Current employees with change-in-control agreements only

If this letter sets forth our agreement on the subject matter hereof, kindly sign and return to the Company the enclosed copy of this letter which will then constitute our agreement on this subject.

Sincerely,

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC.

By: _____

Name:

Title:

Agreed to as of the _____ day of _____, 20 _____.

**FOURTH AMENDMENT TO THE
MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. RETIREMENT PLAN**
(as amended and restated effective as of January 1, 2012)

WHEREAS, pursuant to Section 10.1 of the Minerals Technologies Inc. Retirement Plan (the "Plan"), the Retirement Committee may make administrative changes to the Plan;

WHEREAS, the Retirement Committee desires to amend the Plan to reflect the final IRS regulations governing hybrid plans and IRS suggested language for cash balance plans; and

NOW, THEREFORE, the Plan is hereby amended, effective as of January 1, 2017, as follows:

1. Section 1.1 of the Plan is hereby amended by deleting said section in its entirety and substituting the following in lieu thereof:

“1.1 “ACCRUED BENEFIT” with respect to a Participant’s Cash Balance Account, shall mean a monthly retirement benefit payable in the form of a single life annuity and commencing on a Participant’s Normal Retirement Date, which is the Actuarial Equivalent of the Participant’s Cash Balance Account (with Interest Credits under Section 4.1(d) projected to Normal Retirement Date at the interest crediting rate in effect at the date of determination).

“ACCRUED BENEFIT” with respect to a Participant’s Career Earnings Formula, shall mean a monthly retirement benefit payable in a single life annuity and commencing on a Participant’s Normal Retirement Date, in an amount determined in accordance with Section 4.1(a) based on the Participant’s Career Earnings as of the date of determination.”
 2. Section 1.11 is hereby amended by adding the following to the end thereof:

“This notional account shall be established and maintained for bookkeeping purposes only; benefits under the Plan shall be paid from the general assets of the Trust in the amounts, in the forms, and at the times provided, under the terms of the Plan.

When applying any statutory or Plan limitation and/or minimum benefit that is expressed in terms of an annuity to the benefit derived from the Cash Balance Account, the limit shall be applied to the annuity derived from the Cash Balance Account that is payable at the time and in the form corresponding to the Plan limitation or minimum benefits, determined under the terms of the Plan.”
 3. Section 4.1(d) of the Plan is hereby amended by deleting in its entirety the last sentence of the fourth paragraph thereof and substituting the following in lieu thereof:

“In addition, and regardless of the rate specified in the Plan, an Interest Credit (or equivalent amount) of less than zero shall in no event result in the Cash Balance Account or similar amount being less than the Pay Credits to such Participant’s Cash Balance Account, reduced to reflect the value of any prior distributions. This requirement applies only as of an annuity starting date as of which a distribution of the Participant’s entire vested remaining benefit under the Plan’s Cash Balance Formula commences.”
-

4. Section 4.2 of the Plan is hereby amended by adding the following to the end of the penultimate paragraph thereof:
“To the extent permitted by the Code, including Code Section 411(b)(1)(H), any such actuarial increase shall be offset against benefit accruals for periods of service after the Participant’s attainment of age 70-1/2.”
5. Section 4.4(a) of the Plan is hereby amended by deleting said section in its entirety and substituting the following in lieu thereof:
“(a) **Commencement of Vested Benefits at Normal Retirement Date.** A Participant who terminates employment with the Employer, for any reason other than his death, Disability or termination of employment on or after his Normal Retirement Date, after completing at least three (3) years of Credited Service shall be entitled to receive a benefit commencing at his Normal Retirement Date calculated in accordance with Section 4.1, the monthly amount of which, if such benefit were paid in the form of a single life annuity, shall be equal to the Participant’s Accrued Benefit. Subject to the provisions of Article Five, any benefit payable under his Section shall be made pursuant to the provision of Article Five.”
6. Except as hereinabove amended, the provisions of the Plan shall continue in full force and effect.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Retirement Committee has executed this Fourth Amendment on the 16th day of December, 2016.

**RETIREMENT COMMITTEE OF THE MINERALS
TECHNOLOGIES INC. RETIREMENT PLAN**

By: /s/ Thomas J. Meek
Thomas J. Meek
Vice President and General Counsel
On behalf of the Retirement Committee

**THIRD AMENDMENT TO THE
MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC. SUPPLEMENTAL SAVINGS PLAN
(AS AMENDED AND RESTATED EFFECTIVE DECEMBER 31, 2008)**

WHEREAS, pursuant to Section 15 of the Minerals Technologies Inc. Supplemental Savings Plan (As Amended and Restated Effective December 31, 2008) (the “Plan”), Minerals Technologies Inc. (the “Company”) reserves the right to amend the Plan by action of its Board of Directors or its delegate and now wishes to do so by the following amendment.

NOW, THEREFORE, the Plan is amended as follows, effective as of January 1, 2017:

1. Section 5 shall be amended to read as follows:

“SECTION 5. ADDITIONAL DEFERRALS

In addition to the deferrals provided for in Section 4, a Participant may elect to defer from 1% to 50% of his or her Bonus Compensation for a Plan Year by filing an election with the Administrator pursuant to Section 6. No matching contributions shall be credited with respect to deferrals under this Section 5.”

2. The second paragraph of Section 6 shall be amended to read as follows:

“Elections under the preceding paragraph shall be binding and irrevocable after December 31 of the Plan Year in which they must be filed. However, any election so made shall not apply to any subsequent Plan Year, and thus a new election must be filed for any subsequent Plan Year on or before November 30 (or such other date not later than December 31 that the Administrator may specify) of the immediately preceding Plan Year. Notwithstanding the foregoing, subject to the provisions of Section 409A of the Code, a Participant who first becomes eligible to participate in the Plan after the beginning of a Plan Year by reason of being hired by the Employer on or after January 1 of a Plan Year shall be entitled to make a deferral election under Section 4 with respect to Base Salary Compensation to be earned after the date of the election within thirty days of becoming eligible.”

[Signature Page to Follow]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company, by its duly authorized officers, has caused this Third Amendment to be executed, on this 16th day of December, 2016.

MINERALS TECHNOLOGIES INC.

BY: /s/ Thomas J. Meek
Thomas J. Meek
Vice President and General Counsel

SUBSIDIARIES OF THE COMPANY

<u>Name of the Company</u>	<u>Jurisdiction of Organization</u>
ADAE, Cetco Sp. Z o.o., s.k.a. (Short Name: ADAE SKA)	Poland
Alex Mining & Oil Service Company*	Egypt
Amcol Australia Pty. Ltd.	Australia
AMCOL CETCO do Brasil Serviços e Produtos de Construção Ltda.	Brazil
AMCOL Dongming Industrial Minerals Company Limited	China
AMCOL Health & Beauty Solutions, Incorporated	Delaware
AMCOL (Holdings) Ltd.	UK
Amcol International B.V.	Netherlands
AMCOL International Corporation	Delaware
AMCOL International Holdings Corporation	Delaware
Amcol International (Thailand) Limited	Thailand
AMCOL Korea Limited	S. Korea
Amcol Mauritius	Mauritius
Amcol Minchem Jianping Co., Ltd.	China
Amcol Mineral Madencilik Sanayi ve Ticaret A.S. (Turkey)	Turkey
Amcol Minerals EU Limited	UK
Amcol Minerals Europe Limited	UK
Amcol Minerals and Materials (India) Private Limited	India
AMCOL (Tianjin) Industrial Minerals Company Limited	China
AMCOL Tianyu Industrial Minerals Co. Ltd.	China
AMCOL de México, S.A., de C.V.	Mexico
American Colloid Company	Delaware
Ameri-Co Carriers, Inc.	Nebraska
Ameri-Co Logistics, Inc.	Nebraska
APP China Specialty Minerals Pte Ltd.	Singapore
ASMAS Agir Sanayi Malzemeleri Imal ve Tic. A.S (has branch office in Bahrain)	Turkey
Barretts Minerals Inc.	Delaware
Batlhako Mining Ltd.	South Africa
Bonmerci Investments 103 (Pty) Ltd.	South Africa
CCS, Cetco Sp. Z o.o., s.k.a.	Poland
Centre International de Couchage CIC Inc.	Canada
CETCO Czech S.R.O.	Czech Rep
CETCO do Brasil Serviços E Produtos Minerais E De Meio-Ambiente Ltda.	Brazil
CETCO Energy Services Company LLC .	Delaware
CETCO Energy Services de México, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
CETCO Energy Services Limited	UK
CETCO Energy Services (Malaysia) Sdn. Bhd.	Malaysia
CETCO (Europe) Ltd. (has branch offices in Ireland, Sweden, Norway, Denmark)	UK
CETCO Germany GmbH	Germany
CETCO Iberia S.L.	Spain
CETCO Iberia Construcciones y Servicios S.L.	Spain
CETCO Korea , Ltd.	S. Korea
CETCO Lining Technologies India Private Limited	India
CETCO Oilfield Services Asia Ltd.	Malaysia
CETCO Oilfield Services Company Limited	Canada
CETCO Oilfield Services Company Nigeria Limited	Nigeria
CETCO Oilfield Services Pty. Ltd.	Australia
CETCO Poland, Cetco Sp. Zo.o. S.K.A. (aka CETCO Poland)	Poland
CETCO Poland Fundusz Inwestycyjny Zamkniety Aktywów Niepublicznych (aka CETCO Investment Fund)	Poland
CETCO Sp. Zo.o.	Poland
CETCO Technologies (Suzhou) Co., Ltd. (China)	China
Colloid Environmental Technologies Company LLC (Has a branch in Canada)	Delaware
Comercializadora y Exportadora CETCO Latino América Limitada (aka CVE CETCO Latino America)	Chile

Construction Technologies Poland Spółka Z Ograniczoną Odpowiedzialności (aka CT Poland SP Z.O.O.)	Poland
COS Employment Services de México, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
Double A Specialty Minerals Co., Ltd.	Thailand
Egypt Nano-Technologies Company S.A.E.*	Egypt
Egypt Mining & Drilling Chemical Company S.A.E.*	Egypt
Egypt Bentonite & Derivatives Company S.A.E.*	Egypt
Gold Lun Chemicals (Zhenjiang) Co., Ltd.	China
Gold Sheng Chemicals (Zhenjiang) Co., Ltd.	China
Gold Zuan Chemicals (Suzhou) Co., Ltd.	China
Green Roof Insurance Co LLC	Vermont
Hi-Tech Specialty Minerals Company Limited	Thailand
Ingeniería y Construcción CETCO ICC Limitada	Chile
Maprid Tel Cast de S.A. de C.V.*	Mexico
Minerals Technologies do Brasil Comercio é Industria de Minerais Ltda.	Brazil
Minerals Technologies Europe S.A. (has branch office in France)	Belgium
Minerals Technologies Holding China Co., Ltd.	China
Minerals Technologies Holdings Inc.	Delaware
Minerals Technologies Holdings Ltd.	United Kingdom
Minerals Technologies India Private Limited	India
Minerals Technologies Mexico Holdings, S. de R. L. de C.V.	Mexico
Minerals Technologies South Africa (Pty) Ltd.	South Africa
Mintech Canada Inc.	Canada
Mintech Japan K.K.	Japan
Minteq Australia Pty Ltd.	Australia
Minteq B.V.	The Netherlands
Minteq Europe Limited	Ireland
Minteq International GmbH (has branch office in Schongau)	Germany
Minteq International Inc.	Delaware
Minteq International (Suzhou) Co., Ltd.	China
Minteq Italiana S.p.A.	Italy
Minteq Korea Inc*	Korea
Minteq Magnesite Limited (has a branch office in Spain)	Ireland
Minteq Shapes and Services Inc.	Delaware
Minteq UK Limited	United Kingdom
Montana Minerals Development Company	Montana
MTI Bermuda L.P.	Bermuda
MTI Holding Singapore Pte. Ltd.	Singapore
MTI Holdco I LLC	Delaware
MTI Holdco II LLC	Delaware
MTI Netherlands B.V.	Netherlands
MTI Technologies UK Limited	United Kingdom
MTI Ventures B.V.	Netherlands
MTX Singapore Holdings Pte. Ltd.	Singapore
Nanocor LLC	Delaware
Performance Minerals Netherlands C.V.	Netherlands
PT. CETCO Oilfield Services Indonesia	Indonesia
PT Sinar Mas Specialty Minerals	Indonesia
Rayagada Minerals & Chemicals Private Limited	India
SMI NewQuest India Private Limited	India
SMI Poland Sp. z o.o.	Poland
Specialty Minerals Bangladesh Limited	Bangladesh
Specialty Minerals Benelux SA	Belgium
Specialty Minerals (Changshu) Co., Ltd.	China
Specialty Minerals do Brasil Participacoes Ltda.	Brazil
Specialty Minerals FMT K.K.	Japan
Specialty Minerals France S.A.S.	France
Specialty Minerals (Fuyang) Cp., Ltd.	China
Specialty Minerals Inc.	Delaware
Specialty Minerals India Holding Inc.	Delaware

Specialty Minerals International Inc.	Delaware
Specialty Minerals Malaysia Sdn. Bhd.	Malaysia
Specialty Minerals (Michigan) Inc.	Michigan
Specialty Minerals Mississippi Inc.	Delaware
Specialty Minerals Nordic Oy Ab	Finland
Specialty Minerals (Portugal) Especialidades Minerais, S.A.	Portugal
Specialty Minerals-Qishun (Nanning) Co., Ltd.	China
Specialty Minerals Servicios S. de R. L. de C.V.	Mexico
Specialty Minerals Slovakia, spol. sr.o.	Slovakia
Specialty Minerals South Africa (Pty) Limited	South Africa
Specialty Minerals (Thailand) Limited	Thailand
Specialty Minerals UK Limited	United Kingdom
Specialty Minerals (Wuzhi) Co., Ltd.	China
Specialty Minerals (Yanzhou) Co., Ltd.	China
Technologias Minerales de Mexico, S.A. de C.V.	Mexico
Volclay de México, S.A. de C.V.*	Mexico
Volclay International LLC	Delaware
Volclay Japan Co., Ltd.	Japan
Volclay South Africa (Proprietary) Limited	South Africa
Volclay Trading Co.	South Africa

*Indicates MTI ownership is less than 50%

Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm

The Board of Directors
Minerals Technologies Inc.:

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the registration statements (Nos. 333-160002, 33-59080, 333-62739, 333-138245 and 333-206244) on Form S-8 of Minerals Technologies Inc. of our reports dated February 17, 2017, with respect to the consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 2016 and 2015, and the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended December 31, 2016, and the related financial statement schedule and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting as of December 31, 2016, which reports appear in the December 31, 2016 annual report on Form 10-K of Minerals Technologies Inc.

/s/ KPMG LLP

New York, New York
February 17, 2017

**POWER OF ATTORNEY FOR FILINGS UNDER
THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933, AS AMENDED AND
THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934, AS AMENDED**

Know all by these presents, that the undersigned hereby constitutes and appoints the Secretary and any Assistant Secretary of Minerals Technologies Inc. (the "Company"), acting singly, with full power of substitution, as the undersigned's true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents to:

(1) execute for and on behalf of the undersigned, in the undersigned's capacity as an officer and/or director of the Company, all documents, certificates, instruments, statements, filings and agreements ("documents") to be filed with or delivered in accordance with the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), and the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), and the rules and regulations thereunder;

(2) do and perform any and all acts for and on behalf of the undersigned that may be necessary or desirable to complete and execute and timely file any such documents with the United States Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC") and any stock exchange or similar authority; and

(3) take any other action of any type whatsoever that, in the opinion of such attorneys-in-fact, may be necessary or desirable in connection with the foregoing authority, it being understood that the documents executed by such attorneys-in-fact on behalf of the undersigned pursuant to this Power of Attorney shall be in such form and shall contain such terms and conditions as such attorneys-in-fact may approve.

The undersigned hereby grants to such attorneys-in-fact full power and authority to do and perform any and every act and thing whatsoever requisite, necessary, or proper to be done in the exercise of any of the rights and powers herein granted, as fully to all intents and purposes as the undersigned might or could do if personally present, with full power of substitution or revocation, hereby ratifying and confirming all that such attorneys-in-fact substitute or substitutes, have lawfully done or cause to be done or shall lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue of this Power of Attorney and the rights and powers herein granted. The undersigned acknowledges that the foregoing attorneys-in-fact, in serving in such capacity at the request of the undersigned, are not assuming any of the undersigned's responsibilities to comply with the Securities Act and the Exchange Act.

All pre-existing Powers of Attorney granted to the persons designated above are hereby revoked. This Power of Attorney shall remain in full force and effect until the undersigned is no longer required to file documents under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act with respect to the undersigned's holdings of and transactions in securities issued by the Company, unless earlier revoked by the undersigned in a signed writing delivered to the foregoing attorneys-in-fact. This Power of Attorney may be filed with the SEC as a confirming statement of the authority granted herein.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned has caused this Power of Attorney to be executed as of this __ day of _____, ____.

/s/ Joseph C. Breunig
Joseph C. Breunig

Dated: November 12, 2014

/s/ John J. Carmola
John J. Carmola

Dated: May 21, 2013

/s/ Robert L. Clark
Robert L. Clark

Dated: November 9, 2009

/s/ Duane R. Dunham
Duane R. Dunham

Dated: June 15, 2009

/s/ Marc E. Robinson
Marc E. Robinson

Dated: December 1, 2011

/s/ Barbara Smith
Barbara Smith

Dated: April 22, 2011

/s/ Donald C. Winter
Donald C. Winter

Dated: February 1, 2014

RULE 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) CERTIFICATION

I, Douglas T. Dietrich, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Minerals Technologies Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors:
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: February 17, 2017

/s/ Douglas T. Dietrich

Douglas T. Dietrich
Chief Executive Officer

RULE 13a-14(a)/15d-14(a) CERTIFICATION

I, Matthew E. Garth, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Minerals Technologies Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - (a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - (b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - (c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report)
 - (d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors:
 - (a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - (b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: February 17, 2017

/s/ **Matthew E. Garth**

Matthew E. Garth
Senior Vice President - Finance and Treasury,
Chief Financial Officer

SECTION 1350 CERTIFICATION

Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 (subsections (a) and (b) of Section 1350 of Chapter 63 of Title 18, United States Code), each of the undersigned officers of Minerals Technologies Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), does hereby certify that:

The Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2016 (the "Form 10-K") of the Company fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, and information contained in the Form 10-K fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Dated: February 17, 2017

/s/ **Douglas T. Dietrich**

Douglas T. Dietrich
Chief Executive Officer

Dated: February 17, 2017

/s/ **Matthew E. Garth**

Matthew E. Garth
Senior Vice President-Finance and Treasury,
Chief Financial Officer

The foregoing certification is being furnished solely pursuant to Exchange Act Rule 13a-14(b); is not deemed to be "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or otherwise subject to the liability of that section; and is not deemed to be incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933 or the Exchange Act of 1934.

Section 1503 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act and Item 104 of Regulation S-K contain certain reporting requirements regarding coal or other mine safety. The Company, through its subsidiaries Specialty Minerals Inc., Barretts Minerals Inc., and American Colloid Company, operates fourteen mines in the United States. The operation of our mines is subject to regulation by the federal Mine Safety and Health Administration (“MSHA”) under the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977 (the “Mine Act”). MSHA inspects our mines on a regular basis and issues various citations and orders when it believes a violation has occurred under the Mine Act.

The following table sets forth the required information with respect to each mine for which we are the operator for the period January 1, 2016 to December 31, 2016:

Mine	Section 104(a) S&S	Section 104(b)	Section 104(d)	Section 110(b)(2)	Section 107(a)	Proposed Assessments	Fatalities
	(A)	(B)	(C)	(D)	(E)	(F)	(G)
Lucerne Valley, CA	1	0	0	0	0	\$2,139	0
Canaan, CT	10	0	0	0	0	\$63,398	0
Adams, MA	3	0	0	0	0	\$9,701	0
Barretts Mill, Dillon, MT	2	0	0	0	0	\$1,383	0
Regal Mine, Dillon, MT	2	0	0	0	0	\$400	0
Treasure Mine, Dillon, MT	0	0	0	0	0	\$200	0
Belle/Colony Mine, WY	0	0	0	0	0	\$1,748	0
Belle Fourche Mill, SD	0	0	0	0	0	\$300	0
Colony East, WY	4	0	0	0	0	\$4,305	0
Colony West, WY	2	0	0	0	0	\$4,581	0
Gascoyne, ND	2	0	0	0	0	\$1,280	0
Lovell, WY	2	0	0	0	0	\$1,483	0
Sandy Ridge, AL	3	0	0	0	0	\$8,092	0
Yellowtail, WY	0	0	0	0	0	\$0	0

- (A) The total number of violations of mandatory health or safety standards that could significantly and substantially contribute to the cause and effect of a mine safety or health hazard under section 104 of the Mine Act for which we received a citation from MSHA.
- (B) The total number of orders issued under section 104(b) of the Mine Act.
- (C) The total number of citations and orders for unwarrantable failure of the Company to comply with mandatory health or safety standards under section 104(d) of the Mine Act.
- (D) The total number of flagrant violations under section 110(b)(2) of the Mine Act.
- (E) The total number of imminent danger orders issued under section 107(a) of the Mine Act.
- (F) The total dollar value of proposed assessments from MSHA under the Mine Act.
- (G) The total number of mining-related fatalities, other than fatalities determined by MSHA to be unrelated to mining activity.

During the period January 1, 2016 to December 31, 2016, we did not receive any written notice from MSHA, with respect to any mine for which we are the operator, of (A) a pattern of violations of mandatory health or safety standards that are of such nature as could have significantly and substantially contributed to the cause and effect of mine health and safety hazards under section 104(e) of the Mine Act or (B) the potential to have such a pattern.

The following table sets forth the required information with respect to legal actions before the Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission involving each mine for which we are the operator for the period January 1, 2016 to December 31, 2016:

<u>Mine</u>	<u>Legal Actions Pending As Of Last Day Of Period</u>	<u>Legal Actions Initiated During Period</u>	<u>Legal Actions Resolved During Period</u>
Lucerne Valley, CA	0	0	0
Canaan, CT	0	2	2
Adams, MA	0	0	8
Barretts Mill, Dillon, MT	0	0	0
Regal Mine, Dillon, MT	0	0	0
Treasure Mine, Dillon, MT	0	0	0
Belle/Colony Mine, WY	0	0	0
Belle Fourche Mill, SD	0	0	0
Colony East, WY	0	0	1
Colony West, WY	0	0	1
Gascoyne, ND	0	0	0
Lovell, WY	0	0	0
Sandy Ridge, AL	0	1	1
Yellowtail, WY	0	0	0
